

Owner's Manual

2016 Audi TT Coupe

Audi
Vorsprung durch Technik

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally friendly manner.

In addition to the operating guide, you will find a quick reference guide and a maintenance schedule in the owner's manual.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

About this Owner's Manual 5

Cockpit 6
Cockpit overview 6
Controls at a glance 6

Instruments and indicator lights 8
Instruments 8
Indicator lights 9
On-Board Diagnostic system (OBD) 17

Driver information system 19
Overview 19
Multifunction steering wheel plus 20
Multifunction steering wheel 22
Tachometer 23
Odometer 23
On-board computer 23

Starting and driving 25
Opening and closing 25
Central locking 25
Luggage compartment lid 30
Power windows 32
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 33

Lights and Vision 36
Exterior lighting 36
Interior lighting 38
Vision 39
Windshield wipers 41
Digital compass 42

Seats and storage 44
General information 44
Front seats 45
Rear bench seat 46
Ashtray 47
Cigarette lighter and socket 47
Storage 48
Luggage compartment 49

Warm and cold 52
Climate control system 52

Driving 56
General information 56
Steering 58
Starting and stopping the engine 58
Electromechanical parking brake 61
Trailer towing 63

Automatic transmission 64
S tronic 64

Driver assistance 72
Assist 72
Electronic speed limiter 72
Speed warning system 72
Cruise control system 72
Audi active lane assist 74
Audi side assist 76
Audi drive select (drive settings) 79

Parking systems 82
General information 82
Rear parking system 82
Parking system plus 83
Rearview camera 84
Adjusting the display and the warning tones 86
Error messages 86

Intelligent Technology 87
Electronic stabilization control (ESC) 87
Brakes 89
Electromechanical steering 90
All wheel drive (quattro) 91
Rear spoiler 91
Energy management 92
Information about data recorded by vehicle control modules 94

Infotainment 95
Multi Media Interface 95
Traffic safety information 95
Introduction 95
Switching the MMI on/off 95
Operating the MMI 95
MMI touch 97
Control knob with joystick function 98
Letter and number speller 99
Menus and symbols 101
Free text search 102

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Voice recognition system 104
Operating 103
Command overview information 105
Commands 105

Telephone 110
Introduction 110
Connecting a telephone 110
Using the telephone 112
Favorites 114
Messages 114
Listening to voicemail 116
Emergency call functions 117
Directory 117
Additional settings 119
Troubleshooting 120

Audi connect 121
Introduction 121
Setup 121
Configuration through myAudi 122
Overview of Audi connect services 123
Wi-Fi Hotspot 126
Configuring the data connection 127
About Audi connect 128
Troubleshooting 130

Navigation 131
Opening navigation 131
Entering a destination 132
Canceling route guidance 136
Creating a home address 136
Favorites 137
Creating directory contacts 137
Additional settings 137
Map 139
Online map view 142
Accessing traffic information 142
Troubleshooting 144

Radio 145
Accessing the radio 145
Radio functions 145
Radio menu 146
Favorites 147
Additional settings 147
Troubleshooting 148

Media 149
Introduction 149
Notes 149
Media drives 150
Bluetooth audio player 152
Wi-Fi audio player 153
Online media 154
Multimedia connections 155
Supported media and file formats 157
Playing media 159
Additional settings 162
Troubleshooting 164

System settings 166
Setting the date and time 166
MMI settings 166
Connection manager 167
System update 168
Sound settings 169
Volume settings 169
Restarting the MMI (reset) 170
Notes on software licenses 170

Safety 171
Safe driving 171
Basics 171
Correct passenger seating positions 172
Driver and passenger side footwell 175
Pedal area 175
Stowing luggage 176
Reporting Safety Defects 178

Safety belts 180
General notes 180
Why safety belts? 181
Safety belts 184
Safety belt tensioner 186

Airbag system 188
Important information 188
Front airbags 192
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 199
Knee airbags 204

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Side airbags 206
Side curtain airbags 209

Child safety 212
Important information 212
Child seats 218
Securing child seats 223
LATCH system (Lower anchorages and tethers for children) 226
Additional information 230

Maintenance and Care 231
Checking and Filling 231
Fuel 231
Refueling 232
Catalytic converter 235
Engine compartment 236
Engine oil 239
Cooling system 242
Brake fluid 244
Battery 245
Windshield washer system 248
Service interval display 249

Wheels 250
Wheels and Tires 250
Tire pressure monitoring system 267

Care and cleaning 270
General information 270
Car washes 270
Cleaning and care information 271
Placing your vehicle out of service 274

Do It Yourself 275
Emergency assistance 275
General information 275
Equipment 275
Tire mobility kit 275
Replacing wheels 277
Spare tire 283

Fuses and bulbs 285
Electrical fuses 285
Bulbs 287

Emergency situations 288
General 288
Starting by pushing or towing 288
Starting with jumper cables 288
Use of jumper cables 289
Towing with a tow truck 290
Raising the vehicle 292

Consumer information and technical data 294
Consumer information 294
Warranty coverages 294
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 294
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 294
Maintenance 294
Accessories and technical changes 296

Technical data 298
Vehicle identification 298
Weights 298
Dimensions 299
Capacities 299
Gasoline engines 300

Index 301

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This manual contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example "Applies to: vehicles with BiXenon headlights". Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk "*".

The **illustrations** are designed as a general guide and on your vehicle may look slightly different than what is illustrated.

There is a **Table of Contents** at the beginning of this owner's manual that lists all of the topics covered in this book in the order that they appear. There is also an alphabetical **Index** at the end of this owner's manual.

All **directions**, such as "left", "right", "front" and "rear", are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a "WARNING" within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cockpit overview

Controls at a glance

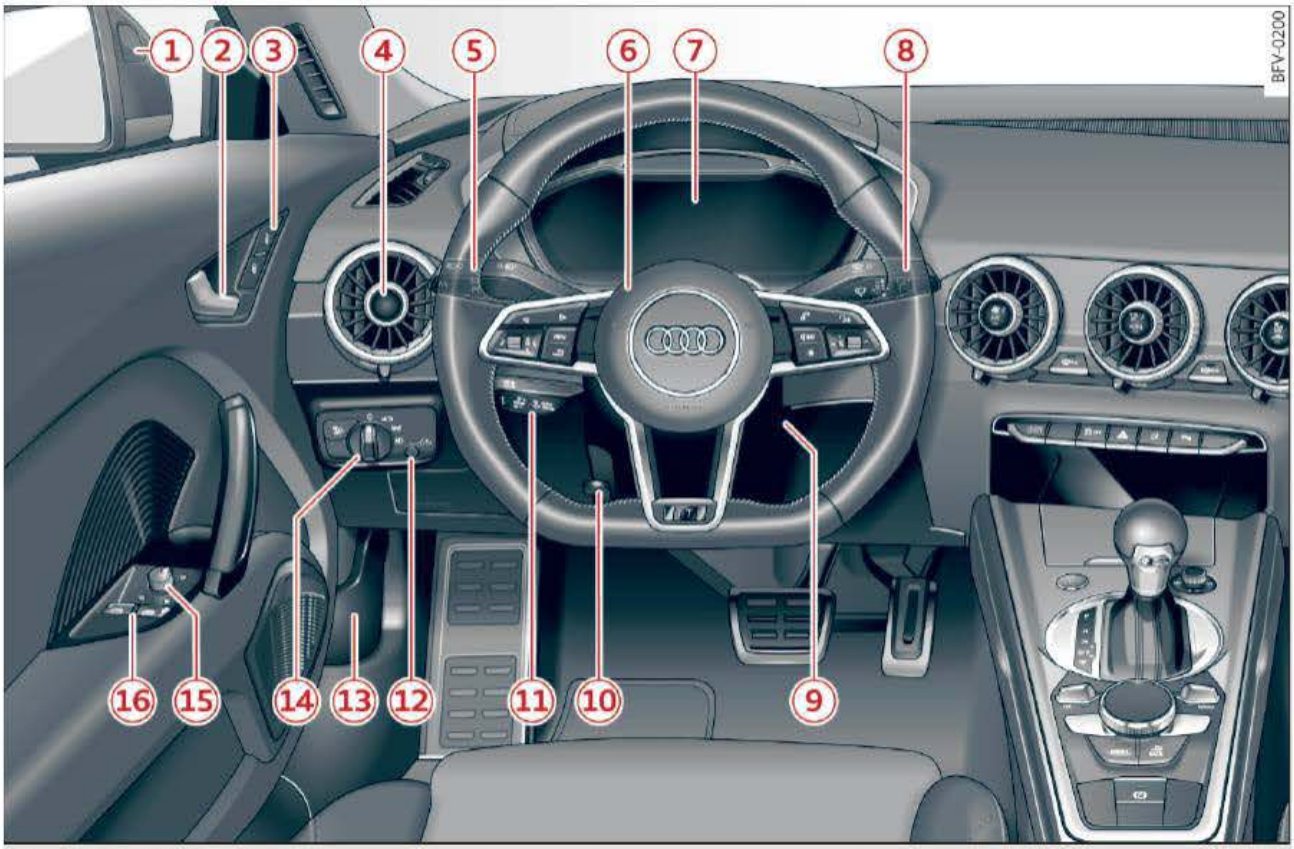


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

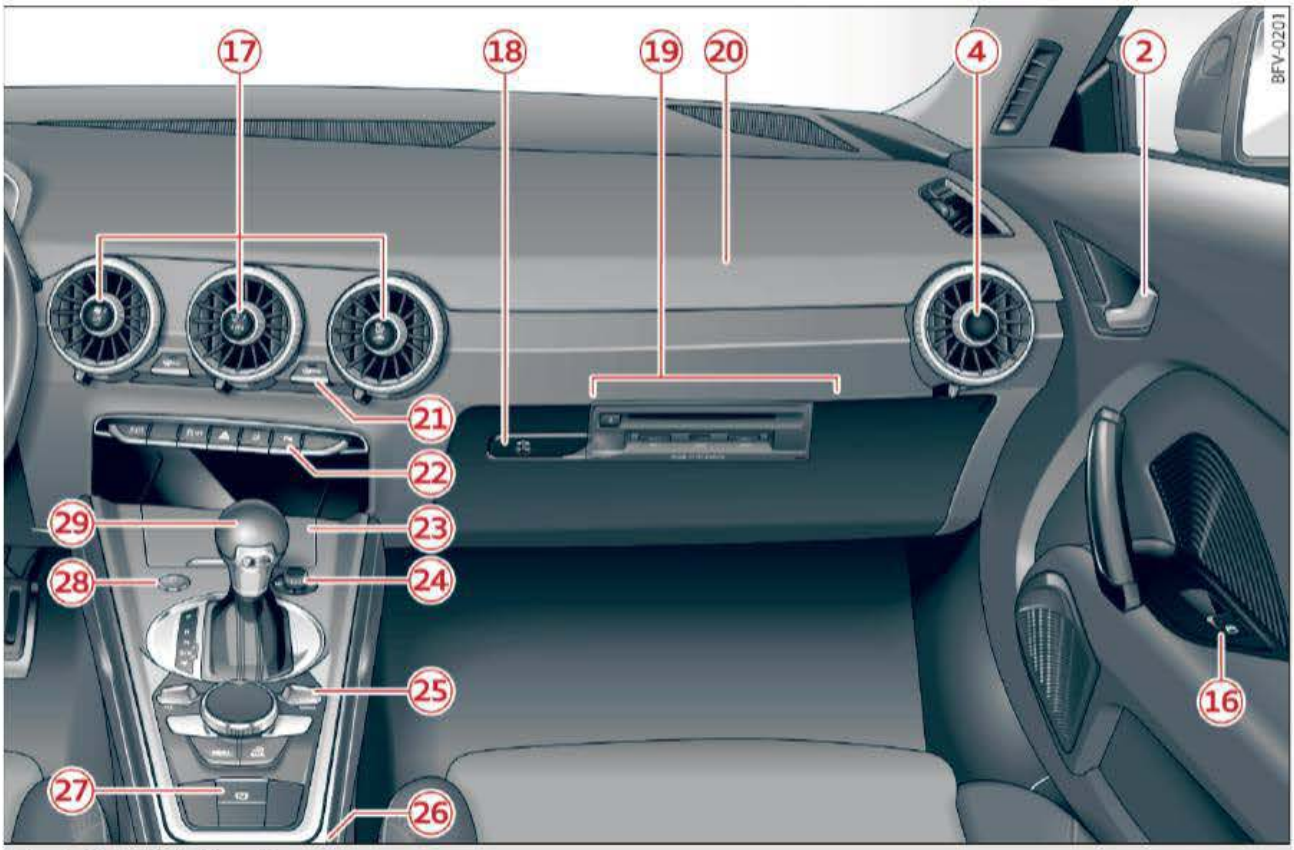


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

① Side assist display 76
② Door handle
③ Central locking switch 29
④ Air vent with seat heating controls
⑤ Lever for:
– Turn signals and high beams . . . 37
– Active lane assist 74
⑥ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 192
– Controls for the virtual instrument cluster including the driver information system, audio/video, telephone, navigation and voice recognition system
– Shift paddles 68
⑦ Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) 8
⑧ Windshield washer system lever . 41
⑨ starting the engine when there is a malfunction 60
⑩ Adjustable steering column 58
⑪ Cruise control lever 72
⑫ Instrument illumination 39
⑬ Hood release 236
⑭ Light switch 36
⑮ Power exterior mirror adjustment 39
⑯ Power windows 32
⑰ Air vent including climate control system controls 52
⑱ Lockable glove compartment
⑲ Drives for CD, DVD, SIM/SD cards 150
⑳ Front passenger's airbag 192
㉑ Rear window defogger button
㉒ Depending on equipment, buttons for:
– drive select 79
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 87
– Emergency flashers 38
– Retractable rear spoiler 91
㉓ Depending on equipment, center console with:
– Multimedia compartment for cell phone 155
– Audi phone box 111
㉔ Infotainment system on/off button
㉕ Infotainment system unit 95
㉖ Depending on equipment:
– Storage compartment
– Ashtray 47
– Cup holder 48
㉗ Parking brake 61
㉘ START ENGINE STOP button . . . 58
㉙ Selector lever (S tronic) 64

Tips

Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instruments and indicator lights

Instruments

Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster)

The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview

① Engine coolant temperature 8
② Driver information system 19
③ Fuel level 8
④ Trip odometer reset knob 23

Coolant temperature indicator

The coolant temperature display ⇨ *page 8, fig. 3* ① only functions when the ignition is switched on. To prevent engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs in the left area of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on under normal driving conditions. The LEDs farther to the right may turn on if the engine is under heavy load or the outside temperature is high. This is no cause for concern as long as the indicator light in the Infotainment display does not turn on. If the red LED in the right side of the display and the indicator light in the display turn on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 12*.

Note

- Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the cooling-air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
- The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Fuel level

The indicator ③ only functions when the ignition is switched on. If the fuel level drops below 1.9 gal (7 L), the left LED will light up red and the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

indicator light will turn on ⇨ *page 16*. The bottom LED blinks red when the fuel level is very low.

The fuel tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in the **Technical Data** section ⇨ *page 299*.

Note

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will then enter the exhaust system. This can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Indicator lights

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages in the display can be covered by other displays. To show them again, select the tab for the indicator lights and messages using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 19*. If there are several malfunctions, you can display them one at a time using the thumbwheel.

Some indicators lights in the display can turn on in several colors.

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly as a function check when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

Red indicator lights	
BRAKE	**USA models:** Brake system ⇨ *page 11*
	Canada models: Brake system ⇨ *page 11*
PARK	**USA models:** Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 12*
	Canada models: Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 12*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 12*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 13*
	Alternator ⇨ *page 13*
	Engine stop while driving ⇨ *page 13*
	Front safety belt ⇨ *page 13*
	Electromechanical steering ✓ ⇨ *page 90*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 13*
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 14*
MPH	**USA models:** Speed warning system* ⇨ *page 72*
Km/h	**Canada models:** Speed warning system* ⇨ *page 72*
	Transmission malfunction ⇨ *page 70*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 91*

Yellow indicator lights	
AIR BAG	**USA models:** safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 15*
	Canada models: safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 15*

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
	**USA models:** anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
	**Canada models:** anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 15*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 12*
	Tire pressure monitoring system ✓ ⇨ *page 268*
	Tire pressure monitoring system ⇨ *page 268*
	Engine control ⇨ *page 15*
	System indicator light (MIL) ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 16*
	Battery charge ⇨ *page 13*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 16*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 16*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 16*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 60*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 27*
	Bulb failure indicator* ⇨ *page 16*

	Headlight range control system ⇨ *page 16*
	Adaptive light* ⇨ *page 17*
	Light/rain sensor* ⇨ *page 17*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 70*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 13*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 14*
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 14*
	Electromechanical steering ✓ ⇨ *page 90*
	Damper control* ⇨ *page 17*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 91*
	Speed warning system* ⇨ *page 72*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 17*
	**USA models:** cruise control system* ⇨ *page 72*
	**Canada models:** cruise control system* ⇨ *page 72*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 75*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 60*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 12*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 75*
	Audi side assist* ⇨ *page 79*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 70*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 12*
	Rear safety belt ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Rear safety belt ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	High beams ⇨ *page 37*

BRAKE/(!) Brake system

If this indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the brake system.

BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models) Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models) Warning! No brake booster

If brake assist (brake booster) is not working, you have to use much more force when braking the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models) Brakes: malfunction! Stop vehicle safely

If the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (ABS) (Canada models), the ESC indicator light, and the brake system indicator light BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models) turn on and this message appears, then the ABS, ESC and braking distribution are malfunctioning ⇨ ⚠.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models) Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. Please contact Service

– If the indicator light and the message appear **when the vehicle is stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. If you cannot release the parking brake, see your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you can release the parking brake and the message still appears, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.
– If the indicator light and message appear **while driving**, the hill start assist or emergency braking function may be malfunctioning. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Do not park your vehicle on hills and see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

(USA models): if the BRAKE and (!) indicator lights turn on together, have the brake system checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ *page 15*.

There is also a warning tone when the lights turn on.

⚠ WARNING

– Read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 236, Working in the engine compartment* before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid level.
– If the brake system indicator light does not turn off or it turns on while driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low, and this increases the risk of an accident. Stop the vehicle and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may be malfunctioning. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the rear of the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the malfunction corrected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PARK/Ⓟ/Ⓟ Electromechanical parking brake

If the PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light turns on, the parking brake was set.

PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to secure the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away even on a small incline.

PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Please press brake pedal to release parking brake

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal and press the Ⓟ button at the same time, or start driving with hill start assist ⇨ *page 62, Starting from a stop*.

Parking brake: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

PARK BRAKE (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Please release parking brake.

Release the parking brake if this message appears.

PARK BRAKE (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Parking brake auto release unavailable

If this message appears, press the brake pedal first and then release the parking brake.

PARK BRAKE (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to secure the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away even on a small incline.

PARK BRAKE (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Parking brake: applied

If this message appears, press the brake pedal first and then release the parking brake if necessary.

Tips

For additional information on the parking brake, refer to ⇨ *page 61*.

Cooling system

Turn off engine and check coolant level

The coolant level is too low.

Do not continue driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 242*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 242*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature: too high. Let engine run with vehicle stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. Wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.
– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 236, Working in the engine compartment*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Do not continue driving if the indicator light turns on - this increases the risk of engine damage.

Engine oil pressure

Turn off engine. Oil pressure too low

Stop the engine and do not continue driving. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 240*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 240*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still blinks, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Alternator/battery

Electric system: malfunction! Battery is not being charged

There is a malfunction in the alternator or the vehicle electrical system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment because it will drain the battery. See your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the battery charge level is too low.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Please turn on ignition

The starting ability may be impaired.

If this message turns off after a little while, the battery charged enough while driving.

If the message does not turn off, have and authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction.

Engine stop while driving

Engine stopped: no power steering or brake servo possible

There is a malfunction in the engine or in the fuel supply system.

More force is needed to steer and brake the moving vehicle when the engine is stopped. If the vehicle is rolling, try to bring it to a stop off to the side from moving traffic. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

Front safety belt

The indicator light stays on until the driver's and front passenger's* safety belts are fastened. Above a certain speed, there will also be a warning tone.

Tips

For additional information on safety belts, refer to ⇨ *page 180*.

Steering lock

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering lock: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Do not tow your vehicle when there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock - this increases the risk of an accident.

Central indicator light

If the or indicator light turns on, check the message in the instrument cluster.

Engine start system

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the engine starting system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Electronic stabilization control (ESC) and anti-lock braking system (ABS)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Reduced stability

If the indicator light turns on, ESC sport mode was switched on using the OFF button ⇨ *page 88*. You can turn the ESC on again by press the OFF button again.

Stabilization control (ESC): off. Warning! Reduced stability

If the indicator light turns on, the ESC was restricted or switched off using the OFF button ⇨ *page 88*. The message **ESC OFF** also appears. You can turn the ESC on again by press the OFF button again.

The system switches on when the ignition is switched on. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

Stabilization control (ESC): malfunction! See owner's manual

Stabilization control (ESC/ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual

ABS: malfunction! See owner's manual

If the indicator light and the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models) turn on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the ABS system or electronic differential lock. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

If the BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may have failed. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the malfunction corrected. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tips

For additional information on ESC and ABS, refer to ⇨ *page 87*.

BRAKE/ Brake pads

BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) Brake pads!

If the warning light turns on, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have all brake pads inspected. Both sets of brake pads on an axle must always be replaced at the same time.

WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

– If the warning light or the BRAKE warning light [1] with the message **Brake pads!** comes on in the instrument cluster display, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have all brake pads checked or replaced if necessary.

AIR BAG/ Safety systems

The AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light monitors the safety systems.

Safety system

If the AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light turns on or blinks, there is a malfunction in a safety system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Have the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during a collision, which increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Engine control

If the indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine control.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the engine checked.

System indicator light (MIL)

The system indicator light (MIL) is part of the On Board Diagnostic system (OBD II). The symbol turns on when the ignition is switched on and turns off again once the engine is started and running at a steady idle speed. This indicates that the MIL is functioning correctly.

The indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine electronics. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

For additional information, refer to ⇨ *page 17*.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to vehicles with engine speed limitation

Maximum engine speed: XXXX rpm

The engine speed is automatically limited to the speed displayed in the driver information system. This protects the engine from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal once.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the indicator light also turns on. Make sure the engine speed does not go above the speed displayed, for example when downshifting. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine oil level (min.)

Please check oil level ▶

[1] BRAKE: USA models only

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You may continue driving for the time being. Check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 239*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 240*.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, drive at low engine speed to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor to check the engine oil level has failed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tank system

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 1.9 gal (7 L) of fuel left in the tank.

Please refuel immediately

If the indicator light turns on the message appears, the fuel tank is almost empty. Refuel the vehicle immediately.

Tank system: malfunction! Please contact Service

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the tank system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

For the sake of the environment

Fuel should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.

Tips

More information on refueling is available on page ⇨ *page 232*.

Washer fluid level

Please add washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off ⇨ *page 248*.

Windshield wipers

Windshield wipers: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction with the windshield wipers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Bulb failure indicator

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb.

Replace the bulb immediately.

Vehicle lights: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the headlights or the light switch. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– Light bulbs are under pressure and can explode when bulbs are replaced, which increases the risk of injury.
– With gas-discharge lamps* (xenon headlights), the high-voltage component must be handled appropriately. Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury.

Headlight range control system

Headlight range control: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other drivers. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive light

Audi adaptive light: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the adaptive lights. The headlights still function.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Light/rain sensor

Automatic headlights: malfunction! See owner's manual

Automatic wipers: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. You can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. You can still control all wiper functions that are independent of the rain sensor.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Damper control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Suspension: malfunction! You may continue driving

There is an adaptive damper malfunction.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Turn signals

If the or indicator light blinks, a turn signal is turned on. If both indicator lights are blinking, the emergency flashers are on.

In an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, then a turn signal bulb has failed. Replace the bulb immediately.

Rear safety belt

Applies to: vehicles with rear safety belt detection

The respective indicator light will turn on briefly when a safety belt on the rear seats is fastened or unfastened.

- If this indicator light turns on briefly, the safety belt on the rear seat is not fastened.

- If this indicator light turns on briefly, the safety belt on the rear seat was fastened.

- If this indicator light blinks, the safety belt was unfastened while driving. Above a certain speed, there will also be a warning tone.

Tips

For additional information on safety belts, refer to ⇨ *page 180*.

On-Board Diagnostic system (OBD)

System indicator light (MIL)

The system indicator light (MIL) in the instrument cluster is part of the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD II).

The warning/indicator light turns on when the ignition is switched on and turns off once the engine is started and is running in idle at a stable speed. This indicates that the MIL is functioning correctly.

If the light does not turn off after starting the engine or turns on while driving, this may indicate there is a malfunction in the engine. If the indicator turns on, the catalytic converter may be damaged. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Drive **with reduced engine performance** (avoid high speeds for extended periods of time and/or fast acceleration) and have the malfunction corrected. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

The indicator may turn on if the electronic speed limiter is faulty. For additional information, refer to ⇨ *page 72, Electronic speed limiter*.

On-Board Diagnostics



Fig. 4 Location of Data Link Connector (DLC)

On-Board Diagnostics monitors the components of your emission control system. Each monitored component in your engine system has been assigned a code. In case of a malfunction, the component will be identified and the fault stored as a code in the control module memory.

The MIL light may also illuminate if there is a leak in the on-board fuel vapor recovery system. If the light illuminates after a refuelling, stop the vehicle and make sure the fuel filler cap is properly closed ⇨ *page 233*.

In order to make an accurate diagnosis, the stored data can only be displayed using special diagnostic equipment (generic scan tool for OBD).

In order to connect the special diagnostic equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located to the right of the hood release ⇨ *fig. 4*.

Your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station can interpret the code and perform the necessary repair.

WARNING

Do not use the diagnostic connector for personal use. Incorrect usage can cause malfunctions, which can increase the risk of a collision!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver information system

Overview

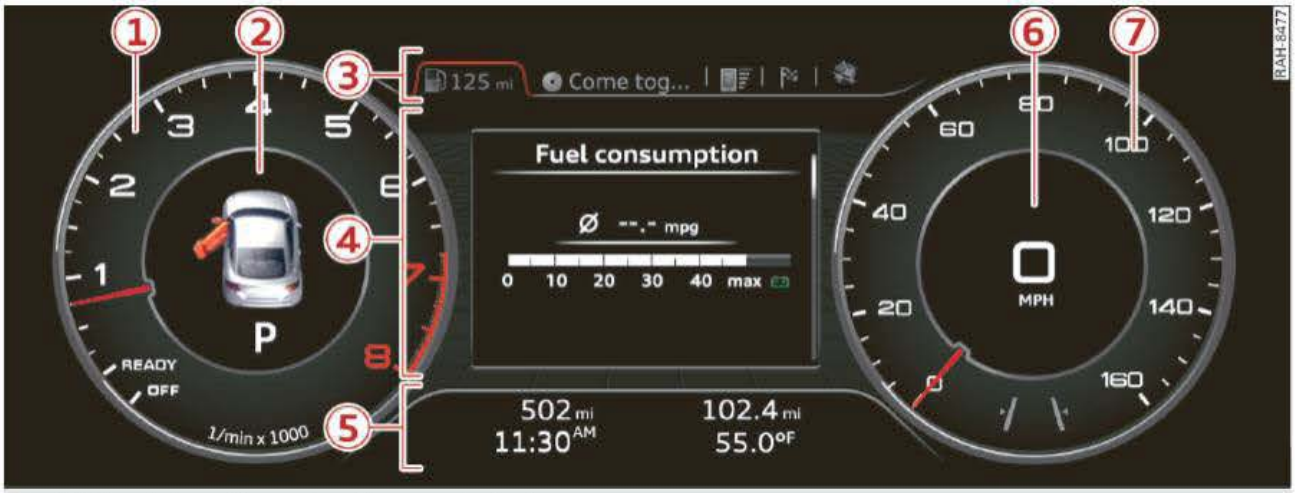


Fig. 5 Driver information system diagram: classic view



Fig. 6 Driver information system diagram: expanded view

The driver information system displays various items:

① Tachometer
② Left additional display (divided in two sections in the expanded view)
③ Tab area
④ Central area
⑤ Status line (displayed on one or two lines)
⑥ Right additional display (divided in two sections in the expanded view)
⑦ Tachometer

WARNING

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

Tips

- You can select the units used for temperature, speed and other measurements in the Infotainment system.
- If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to the heat radiating from the engine.
- At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multifunction steering wheel plus

Operating

Apples to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel plus

The Multifunction steering wheel plus has 14 buttons. You can use them to operate the driver information system and the MMI functions, change the volume and switch the voice recognition system* on and off.*



Fig. 7 Infotainment system display

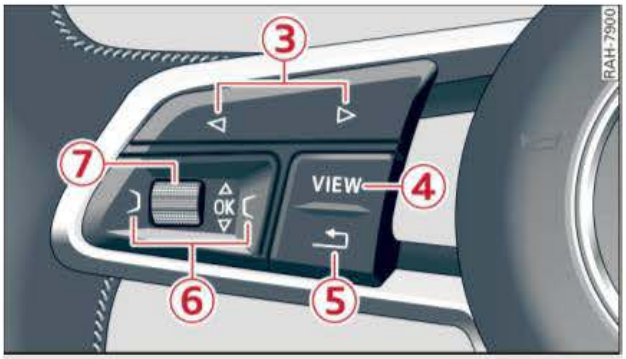


Fig. 8 Multifunction steering wheel operation

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① that display various information ②.

The following tabs are available, depending on vehicle equipment:

1. Tab	Vehicle
2. Tab[a)]	Warnings
3. Tab	Radio ⇨ *page 145* Media ⇨ *page 149*
4. Tab	Telephone* ⇨ *page 110*
5. Tab	Navigation* ⇨ *page 131* Map*
6. Tab[b)]	Sound ⇨ *page 166* Audi connect* ⇨ *page 121* Settings ⇨ *page 166*

a) This tab is only visible if at least one indicator light or message is shown or if the corresponding system is switched on.

b) The contents of the tab depend on the menu that was used last.

③ button ◁ ▷

– **Switching tabs**: press the ◁ ▷ button to the left/right (for example, radio).

④ VIEW button

– **Switching views**: press the VIEW button to switch from the classic ⇨ *page 19, fig. 5* to the expanded ⇨ *page 19, fig. 6* view.

⑤ button ⮌

– **Returning to functions at higher levels**: press the ⮌ button.

⑥ > and < control buttons

– **Opening the selection menu**: press the left control button.

– **Opening the options menu**: press the right control button.

⑦ Left thumbwheel

– **Selecting a function in a menu/list**: turn the left thumbwheel to the desired function in a menu or list (such as selecting a station, Lap times*).

– **Confirming a selection**: press the left thumbwheel (for example, confirm the station).

– **Zooming in/out on the map**: when a map is displayed, turn the left thumbwheel up/down to zoom in/out on the map.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Control buttons

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel plus

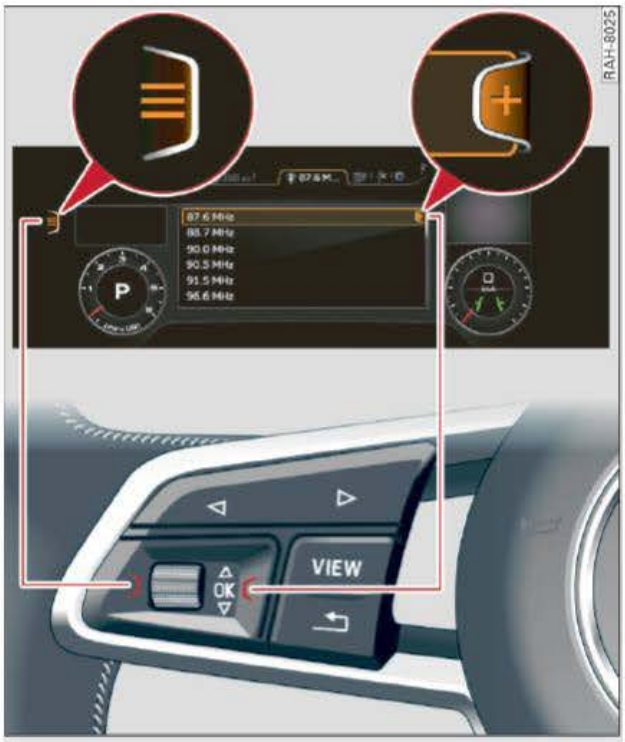


Fig. 9 Opening the selection and options menu

Left control button

– **Opening the selection menu**: press the left control button ◁ ⇨ *fig. 9*. You can now select and confirm a function in the selection menu using the left thumbwheel (for example, selecting a frequency band).

Right control button

– **Opening the options menu**: press the right control button ▷ ⇨ *fig. 9*. You can now adjust any context-dependent functions and settings using the left thumbwheel (for example, sound settings).

Preset buttons

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel plus

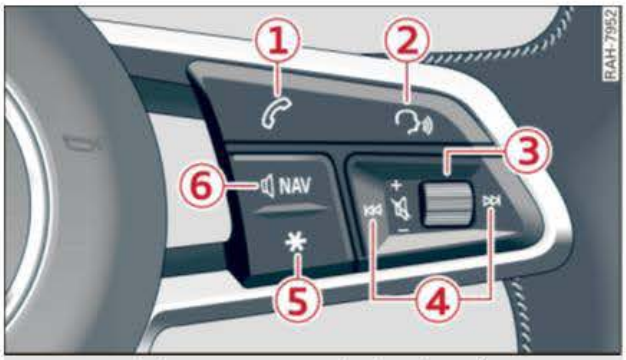


Fig. 10 Multifunction steering wheel, right side

① button

– **Accepting a call**: when there is an incoming call, press the button.
– **Ending a call**: press the button during an active phone call.
– **Opening the call list**: if no phone call is in progress and there are no incoming calls, press the button.

② button

– **Switching the voice recognition system on**: briefly press the button. Say the desired command after the **Beep**.
– **Switching the voice recognition system off**: hold down the button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.

For more information about the voice recognition system, refer to ⇨ *page 104, Voice recognition system*.

③ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward.
– **Muting or pausing**: turn the right thumbwheel downward. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: turn the right thumbwheel upward. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

④ button |◁◁| |▷▷|

– **Selecting the previous/next track or station**: press the |◁◁| or |▷▷| button.
– **Fast forwarding/rewinding audio files**: press and hold the |◁◁| or |▷▷| button until the desired location in the file is reached.

⑤ button |✳|

– **Programmable steering wheel button - opening a function**: press the |✳| button on the multifunction steering wheel.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - requesting a function**: hold down the |✳| button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - changing a function**: select the first tab > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.

⑥ button |NAV|

– **Repeating the last voice guidance**: press the |NAV| button when route guidance is active.
– **Changing the voice guidance volume**: when route guidance is active, turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward during voice guidance.

Multifunction steering wheel

Operating

The multifunction steering wheel has four buttons. With this feature, you can operate the driver information system and the MMI functions and you can also change the volume.



Fig. 11 Standard multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

① Operating the driver information system

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① that display various information ②.

The following tabs are available, depending on vehicle equipment:

1. Tab	Vehicle
2. Tab[a)]	Warnings
3. Tab	Radio ⇨ *page 145* Media ⇨ *page 149*
4. Tab[b)]	Sound ⇨ *page 166* Settings ⇨ *page 166*

a) This tab is only visible if at least one indicator light or message is shown or if the corresponding system is switched on.
b) The contents of the tab depend on the menu that was used last.

– |MODE|: press the |MODE| button until the desired tab is displayed.
– Turning the left thumbwheel: turn the left thumbwheel to the desired function.
– Pressing the left thumbwheel: press the left thumbwheel to confirm your selection.
– Quickly turning the left thumbwheel: quickly turn the left thumbwheel to scroll in the list.

② |VIEW| button

– **Switching views**: press the |VIEW| button to switch from the classic ⇨ *page 19, fig. 5* to the expanded ⇨ *page 19, fig. 6* view.

③ Right thumbwheel

The volume of an audio source or a system message (such as traffic announcements) can be directly adjusted during the audio output.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward.
– **Muting or pausing**: turn the right thumbwheel downward. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: turn the right thumbwheel upward. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in and when it is warm. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, choose the D or S selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Note

The needle in the tachometer may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short period of time or there is a risk of damaging the engine. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Upshifting early helps you to save fuel and reduce operating noise.

Odometer



Fig. 12 Instrument cluster: odometer and reset button

The display of distance driven is shown in miles "mi" or kilometers "km". The units of measurement can be changed in the Infotainment system.

Right odometer

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The last digit shows distances of 100 meters or 1/10 of a mile.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button.

Left odometer

The left odometer shows the total number of miles or kilometers that the vehicle has driven.

Malfunction indicator

If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction repaired as soon as possible.

On-board computer



Fig. 13 Instrument cluster: fuel consumption display

You can call up the following information in the on-board computer:

– Time and date ⇨ *page 166*
– Average consumption
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown using a bar graph ⇨ *fig. 13*. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving fuel through one of the following functions: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **Recuperation**: electrical energy can be stored in the battery when the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill. The bar will move toward .

Tips

– The date, time of day and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system.
– If the vehicle battery is disconnected, all memory values are erased.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Opening and closing

Central locking

Description

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following options:

– Remote control key ⇨ *page 27*,
– Sensors in the door handles* ⇨ *page 28*,
– Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 30*, or
– Central locking switch inside ⇨ *page 29*.

Auto Lock

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

The vehicle can be unlocked if the opening function in the central locking system switch is used or one of the door handles is pulled. The Auto Lock function can be switched on and off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 29*.

Additionally, in the event of a crash with airbag deployment the doors are automatically unlocked to allow access to the vehicle.

Selective unlocking

The doors and luggage compartment lid will lock when they close. You can set in the Infotainment system whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked when unlocking ⇨ *page 29*.

Turn signals

When you unlock the vehicle, the turn signals flash twice. When you lock the vehicle, the turn signals flash once. If the blinking continues, one of the doors or the luggage compartment lid is not closed or the ignition is still switched on.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

In the following cases there safeguards to prevent you locking your remote master key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the remote control key or touching the locking sensor* on a door.
– When locking using the button in the central locking switch, the vehicle will not lock if a door is open ⇨ *page 29*.
– On vehicles with a convenience key*, the luggage compartment lid unlocks again after closing if the most recently used key is in the luggage compartment. The emergency flashers blink four times.

Do not lock your vehicle with the remote control key or convenience key* until all doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed. In this way you avoid locking yourself out accidentally.

Tips

– Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
– The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED lights up for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Key set

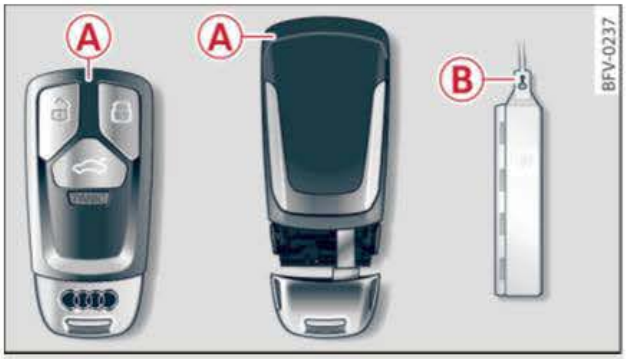


Fig. 14 Your vehicle key set

Ⓐ Remote control key with integrated mechanical key

You can unlock/lock your vehicle with the remote control key. A mechanical key is integrated in the remote control key ⇨ *page 26*.

Ⓑ Key fob with PIN

Only applies to vehicles with Connectivity service*: open the key fob and rub the PIN until it is ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

visible. You can activate the Connectivity service* on your vehicle using this PIN code.

Replacing a key

If a key is lost, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have *this* key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Number of keys

You can check the number of keys assigned to your vehicle in the Infotainment system. To do this, select: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**. This way, you can make sure that you have all the keys when purchasing a used vehicle.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle.

Under certain circumstances, the vehicle may not be able to start if there is a key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

Data in the master key

When driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored on your remote control key. Your Audi service advisor can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs. This applies also to vehicles with a convenience key*.

Personal comfort settings

If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses "their own" master key. When the ignition is turned off or when the vehicle is locked, personal convenience settings for the following systems are stored and assigned to the remote master key.

– Climate control system
– Parking aid*
– Active lane assist*
– Side assist*
– Drive select

The stored settings are automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle, open the doors or turn on the ignition.

WARNING

Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.

Tips

The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters in the vicinity of the vehicle working in the same frequency range (e.g. a cell phone, radio equipment). Always check if your vehicle is locked!

Removing the mechanical key

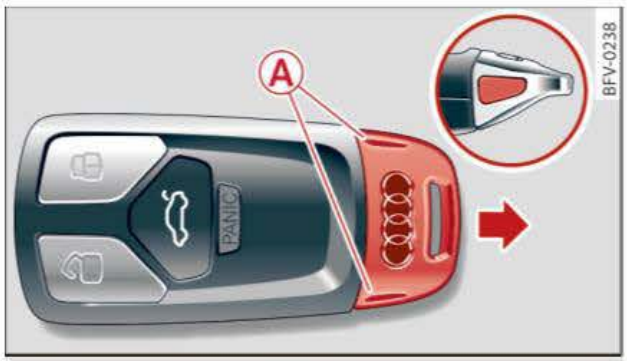


Fig. 15 Remote control master key: removing the mechanical key

▸ Press the release buttons Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 15* and remove the mechanical key from the remote control key.

Using the mechanical key, you can:

– Lock/unlock the glove compartment.
– Manually lock/unlock the vehicle ⇨ *page 30*.
– Emergency lock the doors ⇨ *page 30*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LED and batteries in the remote control key

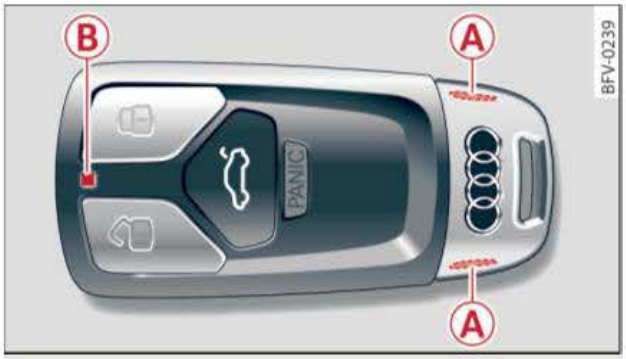


Fig. 16 Remote control key: removing the battery holder

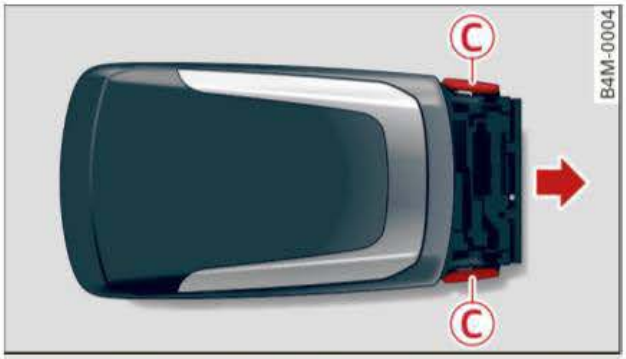


Fig. 17 Remote control key (back side): removing the battery holder

LED in the remote control key

The LED (B) informs you of the remote control key function.

- If you press a button quickly, the LED blinks once.
- If you press a button longer (convenience opening/closing), the LED blinks several times.
- If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is dead. The indicator light and the message **Remote control key: change key battery** appear. Replace the battery.

Replacing the remote control key battery

- Press the release buttons (A) ⇨ *fig. 16* and remove the mechanical key.
- Press the release buttons (C) ⇨ *fig. 17* on the battery holder and, at the same time, pull the battery holder out of the remote control key in the direction of the arrow.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" facing down.
- Push the battery holder carefully into the master key.
- Install the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Dead batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

The replacement battery must meet the same specifications as the original battery.

Unlocking/locking by remote control

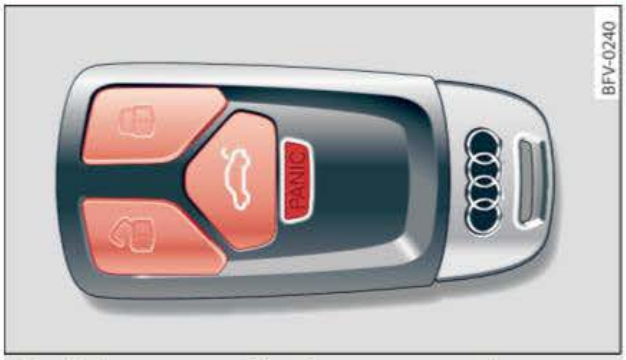


Fig. 18 Remote control key: button programming

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *fig. 18*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.
- To open the luggage compartment lid, press the button.
- To trigger the alarm, press the red PANIC button. The vehicle horn and emergency flashers turn on.
- To switch off the alarm, press the red PANIC button again.

If the vehicle is unlocked and none of the doors, the rear lid or hood are opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle locks again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked over a long period of time.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

WARNING

No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows are no longer able to open ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

from the inside ⇨ *page 30*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

– Only use the remote control key when you are within view of the vehicle.
– Do not use the remote control when you are inside the vehicle. Otherwise, you could unintentionally lock the vehicle. If you then tried to start the engine or open a door, the alarm would be triggered. If this happens, press the unlock button.
– The selector lever must be in the P position on vehicles with a convenience key*. Otherwise the vehicle will not be able to lock.
– Only use the panic function in an emergency.

Locking and unlocking with the convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The doors and luggage compartment lid can be unlocked/locked without using the remote control key.

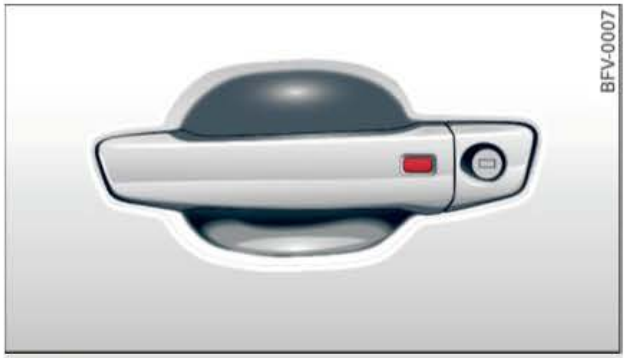


Fig. 19 Door handle: sensor

Unlocking the vehicle

- Grip the door handle. The door unlocks automatically.
- Pull on the door handle to open the door.

Locking the vehicle

- Put the selector lever in the P position (automatic transmissions). Otherwise, the vehicle will not be able to lock.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor in the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 19*. Do not hold the door handle while doing this.

You can unlock/lock the vehicle at every door. The remote control key cannot be more than approximately 5 ft (1.5 m) away from the door handle. It makes no difference whether the master key is in your jacket pocket or in your briefcase.

If you grip the door handle while locking, this can adversely affect the locking function.

The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Key set on page 26*

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for a long period of time, note the following:
– The proximity sensor switches off after a few days to save energy. You then have to pull once on the door handle to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open it.
– To prevent the battery from draining and to maintain the ability of the vehicle to start for as long as possible, the energy management system gradually turns off unnecessary convenience functions. You may not be able to unlock your vehicle using the convenience key.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, refer to ⇨ *page 297*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Central locking switch



Fig. 20 Driver's door: central locking switch

▸ To lock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Press the button to unlock the vehicle.

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– Opening the door and the luggage compartment lid from the *outside* is not possible (for security such as when stopped at a light).
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

– The power locking switch works with the ignition off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when the button is pressed.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

Tips

Your vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto Lock) ⇨ *page 25*. You can unlock the vehicle again using the button in the central locking switch.

Setting the central locking system

In the Infotainment system, you can set which doors the central locking system will unlock.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Vehicle settings**.

Door unlocking - you can decide if **All** doors or only the **Driver** door should unlock. The luggage compartment lid also unlocks when **All** is selected. If you select **Driver** in a vehicle with a convenience key*, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock.

If you select **Driver**, all the doors and luggage compartment lid will unlock if you press the button on the remote control key twice.

Fold mirrors* - if you select **On**, the exterior rearview mirrors fold in automatically when you press the button on the remote control master key or touch the sensor* in the handle.

Lock when driving [1] - if you select **On**, the vehicle locks automatically when driving. All of the doors and the luggage compartment lid lock.

[1] This function is not available in all countries.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency unlocking and locking the doors

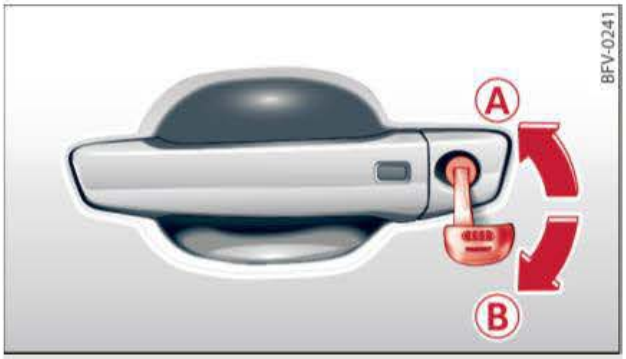


Fig. 21 Driver's door: door lock cylinder



Fig. 22 Front passenger's door: emergency release

If the central locking system malfunctions, you must unlock/lock the doors separately using the mechanical key.

Unlocking/locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 26*.
- To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the open position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 21*.
- To lock the driver's door, move the selector lever to the P position (automatic transmission) and turn the key **once** to the close position Ⓑ.

Locking the front passenger's door with the mechanical key

The emergency release is located on the edge of the front passenger's door. It is only visible when the door is open.

- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 26*.
- Pull the cap out of the opening ⇨ *fig. 22*.
- Insert the key into the slot inside and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or to the left (left door*).

Once the front passenger's door is closed, it is no longer possible to open it from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle.

Anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked as usual. It is switched off when unlocking.

Luggage compartment lid

Opening/closing the luggage compartment lid

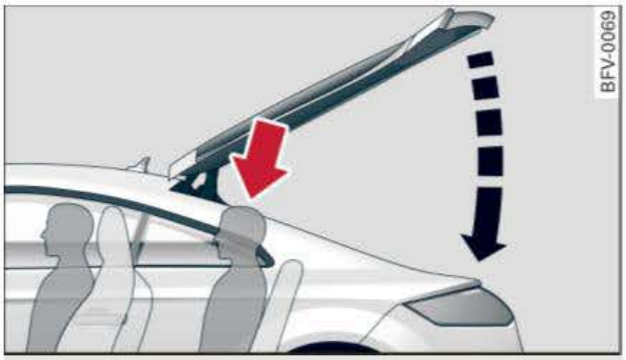


Fig. 23 Opened luggage compartment lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- Press the button on the remote control key for at least several seconds to open the luggage compartment lid. Or
- Lift the luggage compartment lid.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- Pull down the luggage compartment lid and let it close using a gentle push ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– Due to the risk of injury, always be aware of the rear passengers when closing the luggage compartment lid.
– After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. Otherwise the luggage compartment lid could suddenly ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

open when driving, which increases the risk of an accident.

– Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases can enter the vehicle interior and create the risk of asphyxiation.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended when the luggage compartment lid is open. A child could climb into the vehicle through the luggage compartment. If the luggage compartment lid was then closed, the child would be trapped in the vehicle and unable to escape. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid and the doors closed when the vehicle is not in use.
– Always make sure no one is in the luggage compartment lid's range of motion when it is closing, especially near the hinges. Fingers or hands could be pinched.

Tips

– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. When the luggage compartment lid is closed again, it locks automatically.
– In case of an emergency or a faulty handle, the luggage compartment lid can be opened manually from the inside ⇨ *page 31*.

Luggage compartment lid emergency release

The luggage compartment lid can be released in an emergency from the inside.

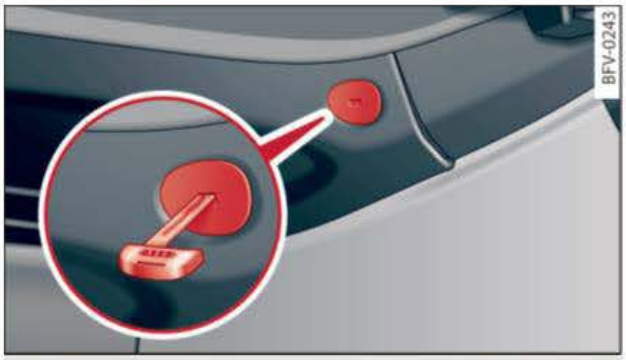


Fig. 24 The emergency release is accessed on the left side of the luggage compartment underneath the rear window.



Fig. 25 Section: inside of luggage compartment: emergency release

▸ Tilt the left rear seat backrest forward.
▸ Pry out the cover ⇨ *fig. 24* using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 26*.
▸ Pull the plastic cord in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 25*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power windows

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

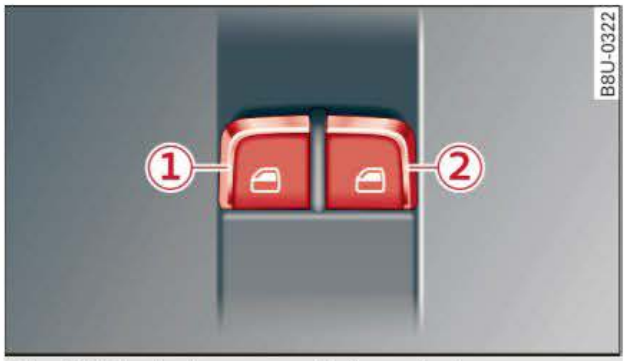


Fig. 26 Driver's door: power window controls

All power window switches have a **two-stage function**:

Opening the windows

- ▸ Press the switch to the **first level** and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.
- ▸ To open the window completely, press the switch all the way down to the **second level** briefly.

Closing the windows

- ▸ Pull the switch up to the **first level** and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.
- ▸ To close the window completely, pull the switch up to the **second level** briefly.

Power window switches

① Left front door
② Right front door

WARNING

– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows). The power windows are functional until the driver's door or passenger's door has been opened.
– Pay careful attention when closing the windows. It could cause injury by pinching.
– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

– After turning the ignition off you can still open and close the windows for approximately 10 minutes. The power windows are not switched off until the driver's door or passenger's door has been opened.
– When you open the doors, the windows automatically lower approximately 10 mm.

Convenience opening/closing

All windows can be opened and closed at the same time.

Convenience open feature

- ▸ Press the button on the remote control key until all windows reach the desired position.

Convenience close feature

- ▸ Press the button on the remote control key until all windows are closed ⇨ ⚠ or

Convenience closing with the convenience key*

- ▸ Touch the sensor* on the door handle long enough until all windows are closed. Do not place your hand in the door handle when doing this.

Setting convenience opening in the Infotainment system

- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Vehicle settings**.

To enable the convenience window opening function, the **Long press to open windows** function must be switched **on**.

WARNING

– Never close the windows carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– For security reasons, the windows can only be opened and closed with the remote control key at a maximum distance of approximately 6 ft (2 m) away from the vehicle. When pressing the button, always watch the windows while they are closing so that no one is pinched in the window. The closing process will stop immediately when the button is released.

Correcting power window malfunctions

After disconnecting the vehicle battery, the one-touch up and down feature must be activated again.

- ▸ Pull the power window switch until the window is completely raised.
- ▸ Release the switch and pull it again for at least one second.

Garage door opener (HomeLink)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)



Fig. 27 Garage door opener: examples of usage for different systems

With the garage door opener (HomeLink), you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems or house lights from inside your vehicle. Up to three remote control functions can be programmed to the three buttons that are integrated in the control unit above the rearview mirror.

To be able to operate systems using the garage door opener, the buttons in the control unit must first be programmed.

WARNING

When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the system. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.

Tips

– For security reasons, we recommend that you clear the programmed buttons before selling the vehicle.
– For further information regarding HomeLink, refer to **www.homelink.com**.
– For the Declaration of Conformity with the provisions from the FCC in the United States and Industry Canada, refer to ⇨ *page 297*.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

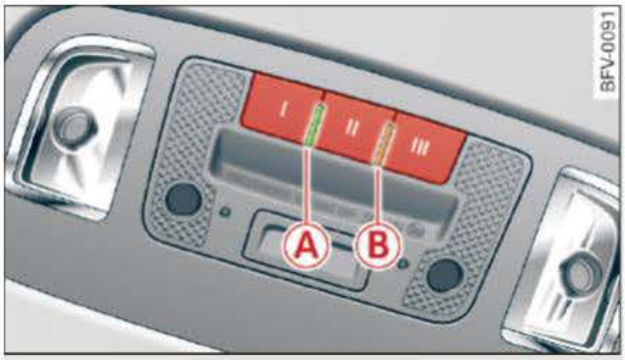


Fig. 28 Control panel above the interior rearview mirror

Requirement: the button in the control panel must be programmed ⇨ *page 34* and the vehicle must be located within range of the system, such as the garage door.

- ▸ Press the button to open the garage door. The green LED Ⓐ blinks or turns on.
- ▸ Press the button again to close the garage door.

Tips

To open or close the garage door, do not press the button longer than 20 seconds or the garage door opener will switch to programming mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Programming the transmitter

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

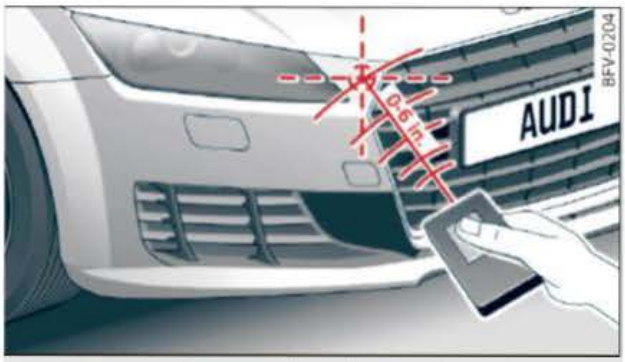


Fig. 29 Distance between the radiator grille and the remote control transmitter

Programming the button: step 1 on the control panel

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press both of the outside buttons on the control panel ⇨ *page 33, fig. 28* until the yellow LED Ⓑ turns off and the green LED Ⓐ blinks. This procedure clears the standard codes that were set at the factory and does **not** need to be repeated again to program the other buttons.
3. Briefly press the button in the control panel that you want to program.
4. Wait until the yellow LED Ⓑ blinks. The programming mode is active for 5 minutes.
5. Go in front of the vehicle with the original remote control transmitter for the system that you are programming to the control panel button.

Programming the button: step 2 at the radiator grille

6. Hold the remote control transmitter at the vehicle radiator grille ⇨ *fig. 29*.
7. Now press the remote control transmitter until the turn signals on your vehicle blink. This can take up to 30 seconds.
8. If the emergency flashers blink three times, the programming was successful. If the emergency flashers only blink one time, the 5 minute time limit for programming has expired or the programming was unsuccessful. Repeat the programming starting from the third step or change the distance to the radiator grille.
9. If the garage door or other systems do not open with the HomeLink buttons even if the programming was successful, the system may use a rolling code instead of a fixed code. You must also then perform **rolling code programming** ⇨ *page 35*.

The other two buttons in the control panel can be programmed using the instructions given above. Start with step 3.

Deleting button programming

The programmed buttons cannot be deleted individually, they must be deleted all at once. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ Press both of the outside buttons on the control unit until the yellow LED Ⓑ turns off and the green LED Ⓐ blinks.

Reprogramming buttons

- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ To reprogram an individual button, press the desired button until the green LED Ⓐ turns off and the yellow LED Ⓑ starts to blink (after approximately 20 seconds). Release the button immediately. The programming mode is active for 5 minutes.
- ▸ Continue with step 5.

Tips

– The distance needed between the remote control transmitter and the HomeLink module in the radiator grille ⇨ *fig. 29* depends on the system you are programming.

– Depending on the system model, you may need to release the button on the remote control transmitter while it is programming and press it again. Hold every position you try when programming for at least 15 seconds before trying a new position. Keep an eye on the vehicle turn signals while doing this.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rolling code programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

On some systems, programming a rolling code is also necessary.

Identifying a rolling code

- Press the button in the control unit that is already programmed again and hold it down.
- Pay attention to the LED Ⓐ ⇨ *page 33, fig. 28*. If the green LED blinks quickly, the system (such as a garage door) has a rolling code.
- Program the rolling code as follows:

Activating the system motor unit

- Locate the programming button on the system motor unit. The exact location and color of the button may vary depending on the system manufacturer's brand.
- Press the programming button on the system motor unit (usually this will activate a “display” on the motor unit). You now have approximately **30 seconds** to program the button in the control panel.

Programming the button in the control panel

- Press the previously programmed button in the control panel for 2 seconds.
- To complete rolling code programming, press the button again for 2 seconds.
- On some systems, the button might need to be pressed a third time to end the programming procedure.

After programming, the system should recognize the signal and operate when the button in the control panel is pressed. Now you may program the other buttons as needed.

Tips

– The rolling code can be programmed more quickly and more easily with the help of a second person.
– If any difficulties occur when programming the rolling code, it may be helpful to read the system operating manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 30 Instrument panel: light switch

Light switch

Turn the switch to the corresponding position. When the lights are switched on, the symbol turns on.

O - lights are off (in some markets, the daytime running lights* are switched on when the ignition is switched on.)

- **USA models:** the daytime running lights switch on automatically when the ignition is switched on and the light switch is set to the **O** or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight). The **Daytime running lights** can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 37* ⇨ ⚠.
- **Canada models:** the daytime running lights switch on automatically when the ignition is switched on and the light switch is set to the **O**, or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight) ⇨ ⚠.

AUTO* - automatic headlights switch on and off depending on brightness, for example in twilight, during rain or in tunnels.

- Parking light

- Low beam headlight

- All weather lights*

All-weather lights*

In vehicles with all-weather lights, the front lights are adjusted automatically so that you are less likely to see glare from your own headlights, for example when driving on a wet road.

Automatic dynamic headlight range control system*

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control system so that the headlights do not blind oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range also adjusts automatically when braking and accelerating.

Light functions

The following light functions are available depending on vehicle equipment and only function when the light switch is in the AUTO position. You can deactivate these functions in the Infotainment system under **Audi adaptive light** ⇨ *page 37*.

Static cornering light* (vehicles with LED headlights) - the cornering light switches on automatically when the steering wheel is turned at a certain angle at speeds up to approximately 44 mph (70 km/h) and when the turn signal is activated at speeds up to approximately 25 mph (40 km/h). The area to the side of the vehicle is illuminated better when turning.

Highway light function* (vehicles with LED headlights) - this function adapts the lighting for highway driving based on vehicle speed.

Speed dependent light distribution* (vehicles with LED headlights) - the speed dependent light distribution adapts the light in towns and on highways or expressways. Intersections can also be illuminated on vehicles with a navigation system*.

⚠ WARNING

- Automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually according to the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beam under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark .
- If the battery is draining significantly, the parking lights will switch off automatically to reduce the risk of the engine not starting.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Always make sure your vehicle is parked and adequately lit according to the laws. Avoid using the parking lights for several hours. Switch on the right or left parking light if possible.
– Please observe legal regulations when using the lighting systems described.

Tips

– The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is in the rearview mirror mount. Therefore, do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.
– Some functions of the exterior lighting can be adjusted ⇨ *page 37*.
– If you turn off the ignition while the exterior lights are on and open the door, you will hear a warning tone.
– In some markets, the tail lights will switch on when the daytime running lights switch on.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

Turn signal and high beam lever

The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

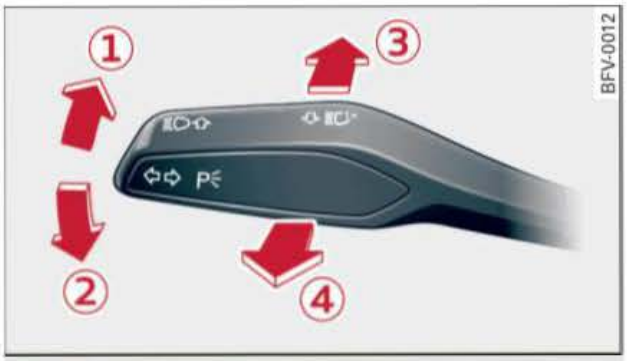


Fig. 31 Turn signal and high beam lever

Turn signals ⇦⇨

The turn signals activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on.

① - right turn signal

② - left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

High beams and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - high beams on

④ - high beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.

WARNING

High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

The functions are adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - you can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Audi adaptive light* - you can switch adaptive light **On** and **Off**.

Daytime running lights*

USA models: the daytime running lights can be switched on or off using the MMI. Select **On** or **Off**. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Canada models: this function cannot be switched off. They activate automatically each time the ignition is switched on. This menu item is shown with a “gray background”.

Coming home, Leaving home

The coming home function illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you turn the ignition off and open the driver's door. To switch on the function, select **Entry/exit lighting**.

The leaving home illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you unlock the vehicle. To switch on the function, select **Entry/exit lighting**.

The coming home and leaving home functions only operate when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Emergency flasher



Fig. 32 Center console: emergency flasher button

The emergency flashers makes other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

- ▸ Press the ⚠ button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Tips

You should switch the emergency flashers on if:

- You are the last car in a traffic jam so that all other vehicles approaching from behind can see you, or if
- Your vehicle has broken down or you are having an emergency, or if
- Your vehicle is being towed or if you are towing another vehicle.

Interior lighting

Interior lighting



Fig. 33 Headliner: interior lighting

🚪 - Door contact switch. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

A switch is no longer needed to switch the reading lights on. A swiping movement or a brief tap on the light is all that is needed to switch the light on or off. If you hold your finger on the reading light when switching it on, this can dim the light down to a certain level.

Interior lighting

There are other interior lighting functions that are available. Several functions can be set in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument illumination



Fig. 34 Instrument illumination

The brightness of the instrument cluster and the center console can be adjusted.

- ▸ Press the knob to release it.
- ▸ Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
- ▸ Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 35 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the desired position:

/ - adjusting the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heating the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folding exterior mirrors*. In the Infotainment system, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's outside mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and further away. Your may estimate incorrectly when you use these mirrors to gauge your distance from the vehicles behind you when changing lanes - accident risk!

Note

If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must use the power folding function to fold the mirror all the way out. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this would impair the function of the mirror mechanism.

Tips

If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dimming the mirrors

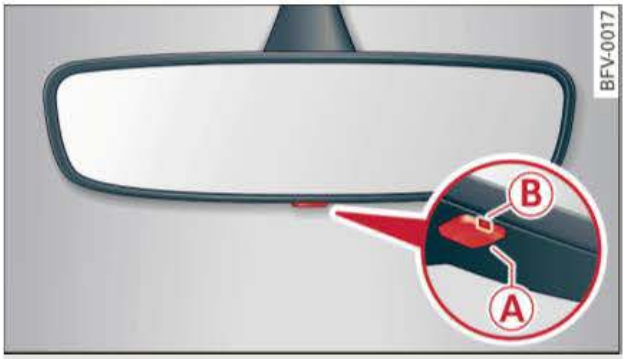


Fig. 36 Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

Manual dimming rearview mirror

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back.

Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ Press the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 36*. The indicator light Ⓑ turns on. Interior and exterior mirrors* will dim when there is incoming light (such as headlights from the rear).

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from automatic dimming mirrors if the glass is broken. Electrolyte fluid can irritate skin, eyes and airways.

– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, flush them thoroughly with a large amount of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid damages plastic surfaces. Remove the liquid as quickly as possible, for example using a wet sponge.

Tips

– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors



Fig. 37 Sun shade

The sun visors can be moved out of their brackets and turned toward the doors ⇨ *fig. 37* ①. The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror ② opens.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

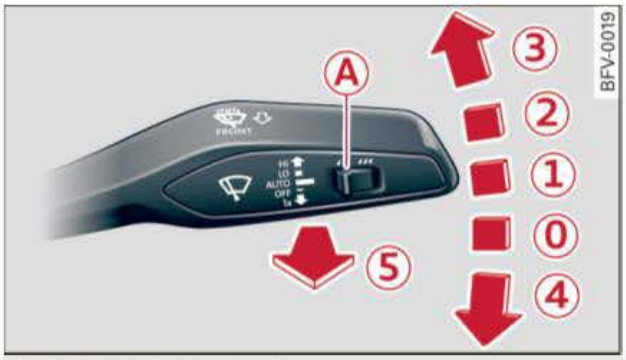


Fig. 38 Windshield wiper lever

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

Ⓞ - windshield wipers off

① - interval mode. To increase/decrease the wiper intervals, move the switch Ⓐ to the left/right. In vehicles with a rain sensor*, the wipers turn on in the rain once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h). The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor* is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode* in the Infotainment system, which switches the intermittent mode on. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Rain sensor** > **Off**.

② - slow wiping

③ - fast wiping

④ - single wipe If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - clean the windshield To eliminate water droplets, the windshield wiper performs one afterwipe after several seconds in temperatures above 39 °F (4 °C). You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds after the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Cleaning the headlights*. The headlight washer system* only functions when the lights are switched on. The headlights are automatically cleaned the first time and every fifth time the lever is moved to position ⑤.

WARNING

- The rain sensor* is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for manually switching the wipers on according to the visibility conditions.
- The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, can cause increased glare which increases the risk of an accident. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 42, Replacing windshield wiper blades*.

Note

- In the case of frost, check whether the windshield wiper blades are frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers can damage the wiper blades!
- Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position 0). This prevents unintentional switching on and damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

- The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is turned off. Activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched back on by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor* function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
- The washer fluid nozzles in the windshield washer system are heated* at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
- When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Clean the wiper blades with a soft towel and glass cleaner.

- Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 42*.
- Fold the windshield wiper arms away from the windshield.

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Replacing windshield wiper blades

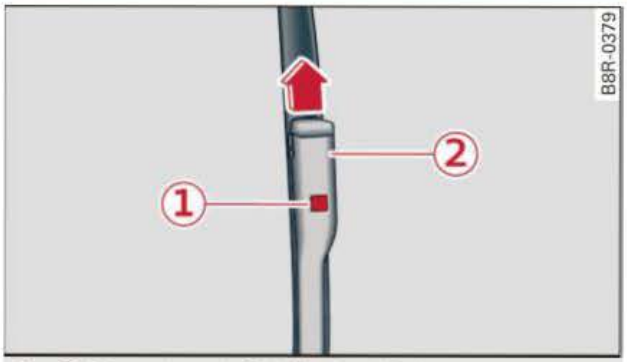


Fig. 39 Removing windshield wiper blades

Wiper service position/blade replacement position

- To bring the wipers into the service position, turn the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever into position ④ ⇨ *page 41, fig. 38*.
- To bring the wipers into the starting position, turn the ignition on and move the windshield wiper lever into position ④ for at least two seconds ⇨ *page 41, fig. 38*.

Removing the wiper blade

- Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- Press the locking knob ① ⇨ *fig. 39* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wiper blade

- Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm ② until you hear it latch into place.
- Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- Turn the service position off.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Note

- The windshield wiper blades must only be folded away when in the service position! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
- You should not drive your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

- You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
- You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

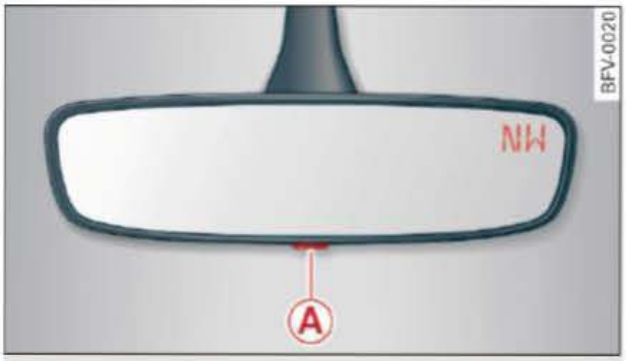


Fig. 40 Rearview mirror: digital compass is switched on ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ To turn the compass on or off, press the button Ⓐ until the compass in the mirror appears or disappears.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

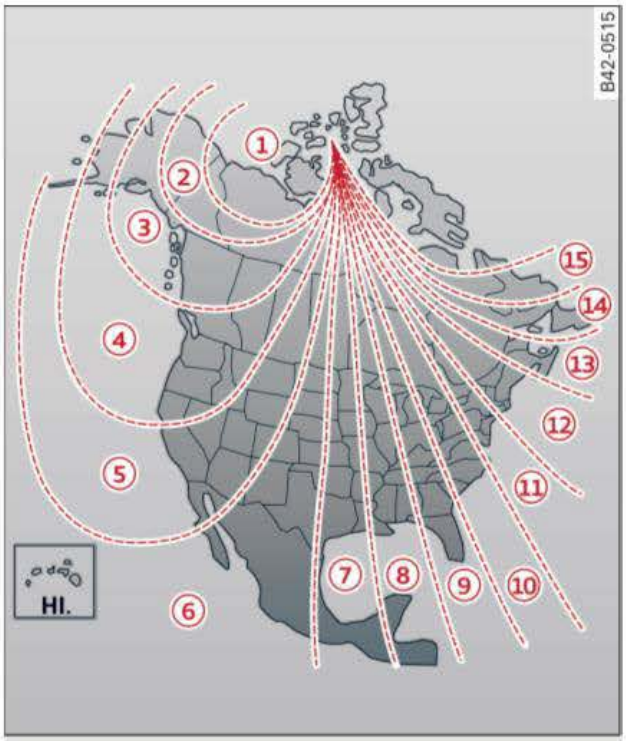


Fig. 41 North America: magnetic zone map

▸ Press and hold the button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 42, fig. 40* until the number of the magnetic field zone appears in the rearview mirror.
▸ Press the button Ⓐ repeatedly to select the correct magnetic zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

If the display is incorrect or inaccurate, the compass must be recalibrated.

▸ Press and hold the button Ⓐ until a **C** appears in the rearview mirror.
▸ Drive in a circle at about 5 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the rearview mirror.

WARNING

– To avoid endangering yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.
– Always pay attention to the traffic and the area around your vehicle if you are reading the compass while driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats and storage

General information

Why is your seat adjustment so important?

The safety belts and the airbag system can only provide maximum protection if the front seats are correctly adjusted.

There are various ways of adjusting the front seats to provide safe and comfortable support for the driver and the front passenger. Adjust your seat properly so that:

– you can easily and quickly reach all the switches and controls in the instrument panel
– your body is properly supported thus reducing physical stress and fatigue
– the safety belts and airbag system can offer maximum protection ⇨ *page 188*.

In the following sections, you will see exactly how you can best adjust your seats.

There are special regulations and instructions for installing a child seat on the front passenger's seat. Always follow the information regarding child safety provided in ⇨ *page 212, Child safety*.

WARNING

Incorrect seating position of the driver and all other passengers can result in serious personal injury.

– Always keep your feet on the floor when the vehicle is in motion — never put your feet on top of the instrument panel, out of the window or on top of the seat cushion. This applies especially to the passengers. If your seating position is incorrect, you increase the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag inflates and the seating position is incorrect, this could result in personal injury or even death.
– It is important for both the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between themselves and the steering wheel and/or instrument panel. If you're sitting any closer than this, the airbag system cannot protect you properly. In addition, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to your body height so that they can give you maximum protection.
– Always try to keep as much distance as possible between yourself and the steering wheel or instrument panel.
– Do not adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly, causing sudden loss of vehicle control and personal injury. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you are out of position.

Driver's seat

The correct seat position is important for safe and relaxed driving.

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat in the following manner:

- Adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals to the floor while keeping your knees slightly bent ⇨ ⚠ *in Why is your seat adjustment so important? on page 44*.
- Adjust the backrest so that when you sit with your back against the backrest, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.

WARNING

Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate.

Front passenger's seat

Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position.

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is deploying, do not sit any closer to the instrument panel than necessary and always wear the three-point safety belt provided adjusted correctly. We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat in the following manner: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Bring the backrest up to an (almost) upright position. **Do not** ride with the seat reclined.
- ▸ Place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat.

Front seats

Power seat adjustment

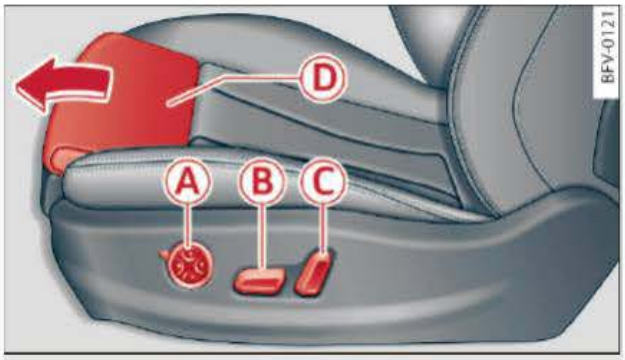


Fig. 42 Front seat: power seat adjustment

Ⓐ - lumbar support or multifunction button* ⇨ *page 45*. To adjust the lumbar support, press the button in the applicable location.

Ⓑ - moving the seat up/down: press the button up/down. To adjust the front seat cushion, press the front button up/down. To adjust the rear seat cushion, press the rear button up/down.

Ⓑ - moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back.

Ⓒ - adjusting the backrest angle: turn the adjusting wheel.

Ⓓ - lengthening/shortening the upper thigh support*: lift the grip handle.

WARNING

- Only adjust the front seat with when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident
- The power adjustment for the front seats also works with the ignition switched off or with the ignition key removed. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle - they could be injured!
- Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment can pinch fingers or hands causing injuries.
- The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.
- To reduce the risk of injury during sudden braking or in a collision, the driver and front passenger should not have their backrests in the reclined position while driving or riding. The safety belts and airbag system can provide the greatest protection possible when the backrests are in the upright position and the safety belts are worn correctly. The more a backrest is reclined, the greater the risk of injury due to an incorrect seating position and safety belt position.

Multifunction button

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction button

You can adjust the side bolsters using the multifunction button.

- ▸ If you turn the multifunction button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 45, fig. 42* to the left or right, the lateral support in the seat will increase/decrease using the side bolsters on the seat backrests.

Tips

The air in the side bolsters* is released as soon as the driver's door opens. This makes is possible to enter and exit the vehicle more comfortably. As soon as you start driving the vehicle, the side bolsters fill.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Easy seat entry

Easy seat entry makes it easier to get into the back seats.

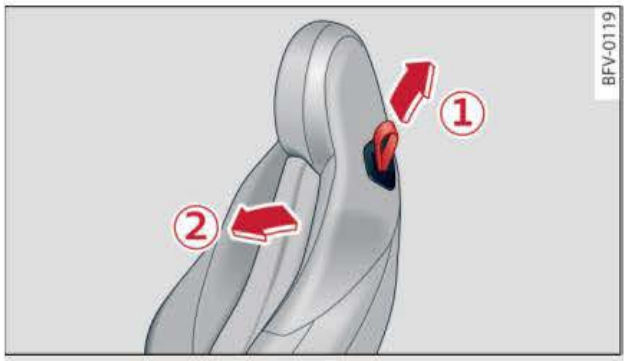


Fig. 43 Driver's seat: loop on the seat backrest

- To fold the front seat backrests forward, pull on the loop and fold the seat backrest.

WARNING

Always make sure the front seats are upright and securely locked in place when driving.

Front center armrest

Applies to: vehicles with center armrest

The center armrest can be adjusted to several levels.

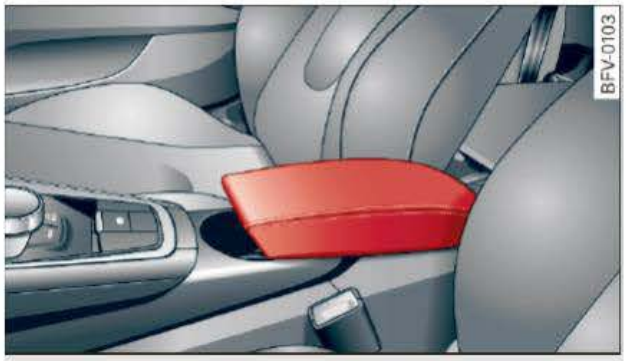


Fig. 44 Armrest between the driver's/front passenger's seats.

- To adjust the angle, raise the armrest ⇨ *fig. 44* notch by notch.
- To bring the armrest back down, raise it out of the top notch and fold it back down. Then lift the armrest to the desired position, if necessary.

Please note that the driver's ability to move his or arm may be restricted when the armrest is folded down. Because of this, the armrest should not be folded down during city driving.

The armrest can slide forward and back.

There is a storage compartment under the armrest.

Rear bench seat

Rear seat passengers must meet certain criteria.

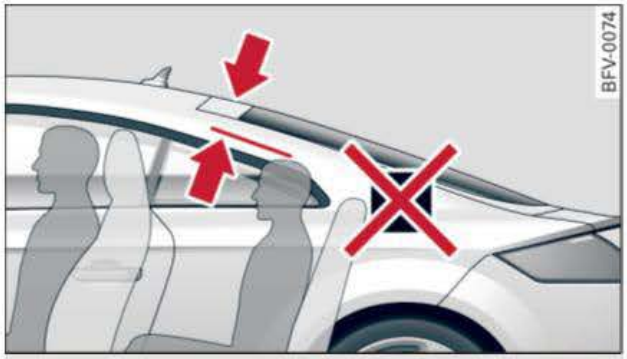


Fig. 45 Correct seated position on the rear bench seat

WARNING

- The rear bench seat may only carry persons with a height of up to 4 feet 9 inches (57 in/ 1.45 m).
- At the same time, the minimum distance between the head and the rear window when sitting upright should not be less than 1 inch (2.5 cm). Taller people could suffer severe injuries when closing the luggage compartment lid or during a collision. Always pay attention to the rear passengers when closing the luggage compartment lid.
- No heavy, hard objects may be placed on the luggage compartment cover. They endanger the vehicle passengers when opening the luggage compartment lid or when braking suddenly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ashtray

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray



Fig. 46 Center armrest folded up: ashtray

The ashtray is placed in the center console under the center armrest. Lift up the cover to open. Insert the ashtray securely back into the holder after every removal (emptying).

WARNING

Never use the ashtray to hold paper, because this increases the risk of a fire.

Cigarette lighter and socket

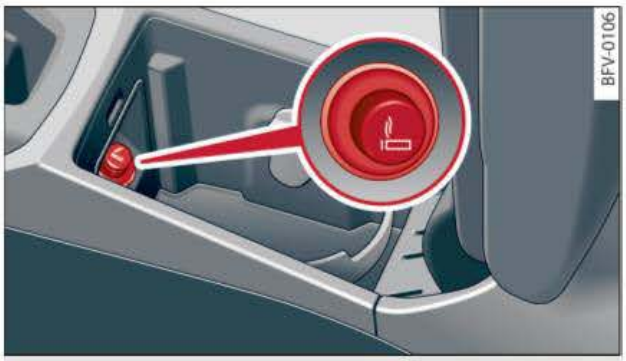


Fig. 47 Center armrest folded up: cigarette lighter

The cigarette lighter or socket only functions when the ignition is switched on.

Using the cigarette lighter

- ▸ Fold the center armrest up to reach the cigarette lighter, if necessary.
- ▸ Press the cigarette lighter in.
- ▸ Remove the cigarette lighter when it pops out.

Using the socket

- ▸ Fold the center armrest up to reach the socket, if necessary.
- ▸ Remove the cigarette lighter, if necessary.
- ▸ Insert the plug of the electrical device into the socket.

The cigarette lighter has a standard 12 Volt socket that electrical accessories can be connected to. The power consumption at the outlet must not exceed 100 watts.

WARNING

Use care when using the cigarette lighter. Inattentive or unsupervised use of the cigarette lighter can cause burns.

Note

- – To reduce the risk of damage to the sockets, only use plugs that fit correctly.
- – The cigarette lighter socket should only be used as a power source for electrical accessories for a short period of time. The sockets* in the vehicle should be used for longer use of power supply.

Tips

- – The vehicle battery drains when accessories are turned on but the engine is off.
- – The vehicle battery must not be charged using a commercially available small charging device, which is connected to the cigarette lighter or socket.

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storage

Beverage holders

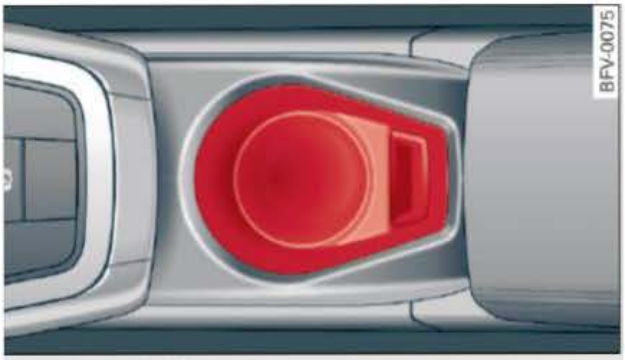


Fig. 48 Cup holder

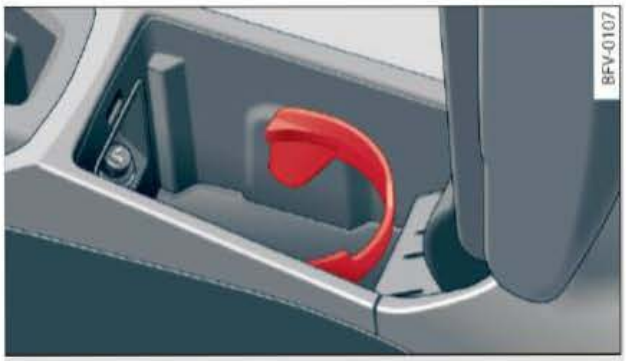


Fig. 49 Center armrest folded up: cup holder*

Cup holder* under the center armrest

- ▸ Fold up the center armrest ⇨ *page 46*.
- ▸ Fold the plastic bracket toward the rear, if necessary ⇨ *fig. 49*.

WARNING

Spilled hot liquid can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- – Never drive with containers that contain hot liquid such as coffee or tea. The hot liquid could spill and cause burns during a collision, sudden braking or other vehicle movement. Spilled hot liquid can also increase the risk of accidents and injuries.
- – Only use soft containers in the cup holders. Hard cups and glasses can increase the risk of injury during a collision.
- – Never use the cup holder or the adapter as an ashtray - this is a fire hazard.

Note

Make sure your beverage container has a lid. If not, your beverage could spill out and cause damage to the vehicle electronic or stain the seat covers.

Additional storage compartments

You will find a range of storage compartments and holders at different locations in the vehicle.

- – Compartments in the doors
- – Storage area in the glove compartment. The glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 26*.
- – Storage compartment under the front center armrest*
- – Storage compartment on the rear side of the front seat*. The compartment can hold a maximum weight of 2.2 lbs (1 kg).
- – Coat hooks

WARNING

- – No heavy or hard objects may be placed on the storage compartment behind the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injuring the vehicle passengers when braking suddenly.
- – Always leave the lid on the glove compartment cover closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury.
- – Only use the storage compartments in the door trim panels to store small objects, that will not stick out of the compartment and impair the range of the side airbags.
- – Make sure that the view to the rear is not impaired by hanging garments.
- – Hang only lightweight clothing and be sure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- – Do not use coat hangers to hang the clothing because this could impair the effectiveness of the side air bags*.

Note

Objects on the rear shelf that rub against the rear window can damage the rear window heating wires.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Roof rack

The roof rack must only be secured in the positioning bolt area.

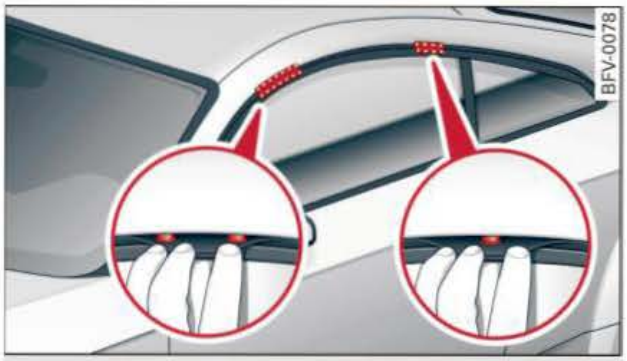


Fig. 50 Mounting locations for roof rack

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

- Your vehicle has aerodynamic rain channels molded into the roof. This is why conventional roof luggage racks cannot be used. We recommend using roof rails from the Audi original accessories program.
- These roof rails are the basis for a complete roof rack system. For safety reasons, some additional attachments are necessary to transport luggage, bicycles, surf boards, skis and small boats safely. All these components are available at your authorized Audi dealer.
- The permitted roof load for your vehicle is 165 lbs (75 kg). The roof load is a combination of the weight of the carrier system and the cargo.
- When using roof rack systems with a lower load capacity, you cannot use the maximum permissible roof load. In this case, the roof rack can only be loaded to the weight limit given in the installation guide.

Installation

When installing the support feet, make sure they are only placed in the positioning bolt area between the side wall frame and the roof frame trim ⇨ *fig. 50*. The positioning bolt is visible as soon as you push the sealing lip back from the room frame trim using the designated tool.

WARNING

- The cargo must be securely attached on the roof rack, otherwise you increase the risk of an accident.
- You must under no circumstances exceed the permissible roof load, the permissible axle loads and the permissible overall weight of your vehicle because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Please note that there is a higher risk of collision when transporting heavy objects or objects with a large surface on the roof rack, since the handling characteristics change due to a shift in the center of gravity or the greater surface area exposed to the wind. So adapt your driving and speed to the actual conditions.

Note

If you use other roof luggage rack systems or do not install the racks as intended, any damage to the vehicle is not covered by the warranty. Carefully follow the assembly and installation instructions included with the roof rack carrier system.

For the sake of the environment

A roof rack is often left mounted out of convenience even if it is no longer used. Your vehicle will use more fuel due to the increased wind resistance. So remove the roof rack after using it.

Luggage compartment

General information

WARNING

Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 176, Stowing luggage*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment cover blocks the view into the luggage compartment.

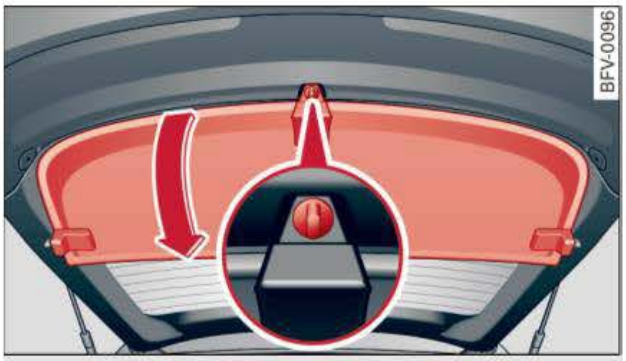


Fig. 51 Opened rear lid with luggage compartment cover

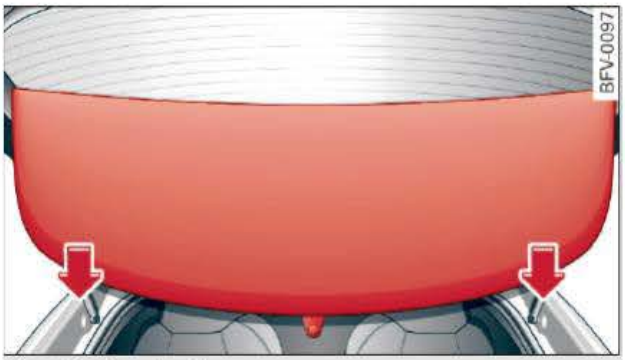


Fig. 52 Unlocked luggage compartment cover

Removing the luggage compartment cover

- To unlock the luggage compartment cover, turn the twist lock to the horizontal position ⇨ *fig. 51*.
- Grip the side of the luggage compartment cover and pull the cover in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 52*.

Installing the luggage compartment cover

- Place the luggage compartment cover with the retainers on the pins and slide the cover upward.
- Turn the twist lock with gentle pressure to the vertical position.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of accidents, never install the luggage compartment cover without securing it.

– The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover could endanger all vehicle occupants during sudden braking maneuvers or in a crash.

Note

The defogger and antenna wires in the rear window can be damaged by objects on the luggage compartment cover rubbing against them.

Increasing the size of the luggage compartment

To expand the luggage compartment, both sections of the backrest can be separated or can be folded forward together.



Fig. 53 Backrest release lever (left side)

Folding the backrest forward

- Push the release lever ⇨ *fig. 53* in the direction of the arrow.
- Fold the backrest forward.

Folding the backrest back into the upright position

- Fold the backrest down until it latches securely ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– The backrest must be securely latched to ensure the safety belt is protecting the rear seat positions.

– The backrest must be securely latched so objects cannot slide forward out of the luggage compartment during sudden braking. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Make sure the safety belt is not pinched in the backrest lock and damaged when the rear seat backrest if folded back.

Lowering the cargo floor

In exceptional situations, the cargo floor can be lowered.



Fig. 54 Luggage compartment: cargo floor removed



Fig. 55 Luggage compartment: spare tire removed

- Remove the cargo floor ⇨ *page 275*.
- Remove the plastic floor panel ⇨ *fig. 54*.
- Turn the handle counter-clockwise to remove and remove the foam piece.
- Remove the spare tire.
- Reinsert the foam piece and turn the handle clockwise to tighten.
- Now reinsert the cargo floor.

WARNING

Please note that you are no longer mobile in the event of a flat tire. Please note the legal regulations before removing the spare tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

The climate control system warms, cools and adds humidity to the air in the vehicle interior. It functions most effectively when the windows are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

Key recognition

Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

WARNING

Poor visibility can lead to accidents.

- For safer driving, keep all windows free of ice, snow and fog.
- Become familiar as quickly as possible with the correct use and function of the climate control system, especially with the defrosting and defogging function.
- When the temperature is below freezing, only use the windshield washer system after the windshield has been warmed by the climate control system. The washer fluid could freeze on the windshield and impair visibility.

Note

- If you suspect that the climate control system is damaged, switch the system off to prevent further damage and have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Repairs to the Audi climate control system require special technical knowledge and special tools. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

For the sake of the environment

Reducing the amount of fuel used also reduces the amount of pollutants that enter the air.

Tips

- To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow or leaves.
- Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
- The energy management system may switch the seat heating* or rear window defroster off temporarily. These systems are available again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.
- The flows through the vents under the rear window. Make sure the openings are not covered when placing clothing on the luggage compartment cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic climate control system controls

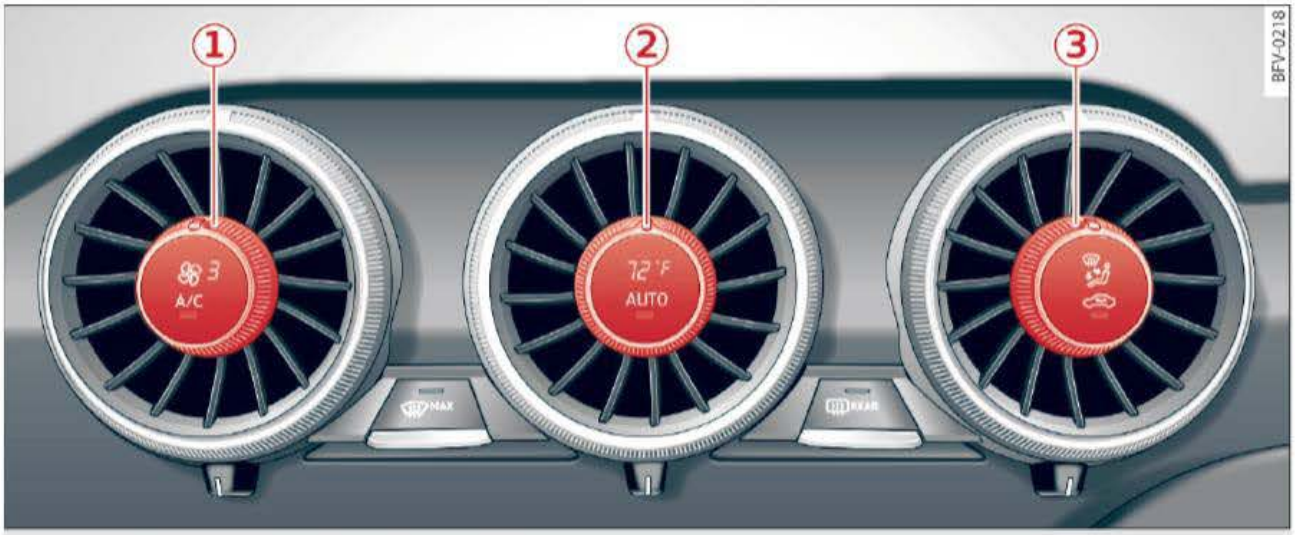


Fig. 56 Automatic climate control system: controls

You can control the functions through the dial, buttons in the dial and the buttons. Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on.

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C). The automatic climate control system automatically maintains a temperature once it has been set. The temperature of the air from the vents, fan speed, and air distribution are also automatically adjusted. In all heating mode functions except *defrost*, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a certain temperature.

Adjusting the blower

The blower speed can be adjusted in small increments using the dial ①. To prevent the windows from fogging over, the blower should always run at a low speed. You can adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

A/C Switching cooling mode on and off

The cooling system is turned on and off with the A/C button. The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. Cooling mode switches off automatically when the outside temperature is below zero.

The temperature can be adjusted with the control ②.

Adjusting the temperature

The temperature can be adjusted in small increments using the dial ②.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on and off

The automatic mode is turned on using the AUTO button. AUTO mode switches off once a button in the climate control system is pressed. Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

Adjusting the air distribution

The **air distribution** can be adjusted with the control ③. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

The round air vents in the cockpit are adjustable ⇨ *page 54*.

To keep the front side windows from fogging up in damp weather, we recommend opening the side air vents and tilting them to the side.

Switching recirculation mode on and off

The recirculation mode can be turned on manually or automatically*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Switching manual recirculation mode on and off: press [⛐]
– Automatic* recirculation mode: auto recirculation needs to be activated in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: [MENU] button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Vehicle settings** > **Air conditioning** > **Auto recirculation**. The air quality sensor that is designed for diesel and gasoline exhaust automatically switches the recirculation mode on or off depending on the level of pollutants in the outside air.

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. We recommend switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic ⇨ ⚠.

Recirculation mode is switched off by pressing the [⛐] button or [AUTO] or [MAX].

[MAX] Switching defrost on and off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The optimum amount of air flows mainly out of the vents under the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature is controlled automatically.

The [AUTO] button switches the defroster off.

[REAR] Switching the rear window defogger on and off

If the rear window defogger is activated when the ignition is switched on, the battery management determines based on the battery charge if it is possible to turn on. Otherwise, the rear window defogger functions with the engine running and switches off automatically after approximately 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window defogger from switching off automatically, press and hold the [REAR] button for more than 2 seconds. This remains stored up to approximately 15 minutes after turning off the ignition.

⚠ WARNING

You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident.

Adjusting the air vents



Fig. 57 Cockpit: adjusting the air vents

To adjust the **direction of air flow**, turn the ridged outer adjustment wheel ① ⇨ *fig. 57*.

To adjust the **amount of air flow**, move the lever ② on the air vent. To stop the air flow, move the lever all the way to the left.

Seat heating



Fig. 58 Air vents: seat heating

The seat heating has three levels. The selected heat level is indicated by the LED.

- To switch the seat heating on, press the [⛐] button once.
- To switch to a lower level, press the [⛐] button again.
- To switch the seat heating off, press the [⛐] button repeatedly until the LED turns off. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The seat heating switches automatically from setting 3 to setting 2 after 10 minutes.

When seat heating should not be switched on

Do **not** turn the seat heating on under the following circumstances:

– The seat is unoccupied.
– The seat is covered with a seat cover.
– The seat is covered with a child seat.
– The seat is damp or wet.

WARNING

Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

Tips

– The setting for the seat heating on the driver's side is assigned to the key that is in use.
– If the front passenger's seat heating is turned on, it will not turn on again automatically if more than 10 minutes have passed between switching the ignition off and switching it on again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving

General information

New engine

The engine needs to be run-in during the first 1,000 mi (1,500 km).

For the first 600 mi (1,000 km):

- Do not use full throttle.
- Do not drive at engine speeds that are more than 2/3 of the maximum permitted RPM.
- Avoid high engine speeds.

From 600 to 1,000 mi (1,000 to 1,500 km):

- Speeds can *gradually* be increased to the maximum permissible road or engine speed.

During and after break-in period

- Do not rev the engine up to high speeds when it is cold. This applies whether the transmission is in N (Neutral) or in gear.

After the break-in period

- Do not exceed maximum engine speed under any circumstances.
- Upshift into the next higher gear *before* reaching the red area at the end of the tachometer scale ⇨ *page 8*.

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all the moving parts have been broken in. How well this break-in process is done depends to a considerable extent on the way the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 mi (1,500 km).

Note

Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced. However, these rpm limits are programmed for an engine well run-in, not a new engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive with unnecessarily high engine speeds - upshifting early saves fuel, reduces noise and protects the environment.

New tires

If your vehicle is running on new tires, drive particularly careful for the first 350 mi (500 km) after fitting.

WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in". Be sure to remember this during the first 350 mi (500 km). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking.

Avoid damaging the vehicle

When you are driving on poor roads, or over curbs, steep ramps, etc., make certain that low-lying parts such as spoilers and exhaust system parts do not bottom out and get damaged.

This is especially true for vehicles with low-slung chassis (sports chassis)* and fully loaded vehicles.

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to avoid vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

WARNING

After driving through water or mud, the braking effect can be reduced due to moisture on the brake discs and brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brakes.

Note

Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tips

- Determine the depth before driving through water.
- Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
- Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
- Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion).

Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

The amount of fuel consumption, the environmental impact and the wear to the engine, brakes and tires depends mostly on your driving style. With an anticipatory and economic driving style, fuel consumption can be reduced by approximately 10-15%. The following tips will help you conserve the environment and your money at the same time.

Anticipatory driving

A vehicle uses the most fuel when accelerating. When you drive with anticipation, you do not need to brake as often and thus accelerate less. When possible, let your vehicle coast with a **gear engaged** - for example, when you notice that the next traffic light is red.

Avoid full acceleration

You should rarely travel at the maximum vehicle speed. High speeds cause a disproportionately high increase in fuel consumption, emissions and traffic noise. Slower driving saves fuel.

Reduce idling time

It pays off to stop the engine, for example when at railroad crossings or traffic lights with longer red lights. Stopping the engine for 30-40 seconds already saves more fuel than the amount of extra fuel needed to restart the engine.

It takes a very long time in idle to warm the engine up to operating temperature. Wear and emissions are especially high in the warm-up phase. Therefore, you should begin driving immediately after starting the engine. Avoid high RPMs while doing this.

Service regularly

By servicing your vehicle regularly, you can help to reduce fuel consumption before you even start to drive. The maintenance condition of your vehicle not only affects traffic safety and long-term value but also impacts **fuel consumption**.

A poorly serviced engine can lead to fuel consumption that is 10% higher than normal.

Also check the **oil level** when refueling. The **oil consumption** depends largely on the engine load and speed. It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine to reach its lowest point only after a certain amount of use. Therefore, the oil consumption can only be properly judged after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km) have been driven.

Avoid short trips

The engine and exhaust cleaning system must reach their optimal **operating temperature** to effectively reduce consumption and emissions.

A cold engine consumes a disproportionately high amount of fuel. The engine is at operating temperature and consumption has normalized only after approximately *four* kilometers.

Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.

Note

- Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
– Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.

Steering

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The steering wheel position is fully adjustable up and down and forward and back.



Fig. 59 Lever on the steering column

- Tilt the lever ⇨ *fig. 59* downward. ⇨ ⚠
- Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
- Push the lever against the steering column until it latches.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering wheel adjustment and an incorrect seating position can cause serious injuries.
– Only adjust the steering column when the vehicle is stationary so that you do not lose control of the vehicle.
– Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is at least a 10 in (25 cm) distance between your chest and the steering wheel. If you do not maintain this distance, you will not be properly protected by the airbag system.
– If your physical characteristics prevent you from sitting at least 10 in (25 cm) or more away from the steering wheel, see if your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can provide adapters that will help.
– If your face is level with the steering wheel, the airbag does not provide as much protection during a collision. Always make sure that the steering wheel is level with your chest.
– Always hold the steering wheel with your hands in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of injury if the airbag deploys.
– Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or with both hands on the rim or the center of the steering wheel. Holding the steering wheel incorrectly significantly increases the risk of injury to the hands, arms and head if the airbag deploys.

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

The START ENGINE STOP *button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.*



Fig. 60 Center console: START ENGINE STOP button ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching the ignition on/off

- To switch the ignition on/off, press the START ENGINE STOP button. Do not press the brake pedal while doing this.

Starting the engine

- Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever into the P or N position ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *fig. 60*. The engine will start.

If the engine should not start immediately, the starting process is automatically stopped after a short time. Repeat the starting process.

⚠ WARNING

- Never allow the engine to run in confined spaces - danger of asphyxiation.
- Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- The brake booster and power steering only work when the engine is running. If the engine is off, you have to use more force when steering or braking. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually would, this could lead to crashes and serious injuries.

Note

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load as long as the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

Tips

- Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
- If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.

Stopping the engine

- Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- Move the selector lever into the P position.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 58, fig. 60*.

Emergency off

If it is necessary in unusual circumstances, the engine can be switched off while the vehicle is moving. Briefly press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in a row or press and hold for longer than two seconds.

⚠ WARNING

- Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- Please note that the brake booster and power steering only work when the engine is running. When the engine off, you must use more force to steer or brake the vehicle. Because the usual steering and braking capability is not available, the risk of accidents or injuries increases.
- For safety reasons, always park the vehicle with the selector lever in the P position. Otherwise, there is the risk that the vehicle could roll.
- After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition switched off. It can also switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises as the result of heat buildup or if the engine compartment is heated by the sun's rays and the engine is hot.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off - there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run for at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Messages

Turn off ignition before leaving vehicle. Battery is discharging

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on. Switch the ignition off so that the battery will not discharge.

Pressing start/stop button again will switch off engine.

This message appears when you press the START ENGINE STOP button while driving.

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The engine automatic start system has a malfunction. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. To start the engine, press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button.

Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual

This message appears if there is no convenience key inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize the key. The convenience key may not be recognized, for example, if it is covered by an object that *disrupts* the signal (such as a briefcase), or if the key battery is weak. Electronic devices such as cell phones can also interfere with the signal.

To still be able to start or stop the engine, refer to "Correcting a malfunction" ⇨ *page 60*.

Remote control key: key not recognized. Is the key still in the vehicle?

The indicator light turns on and this message appears if the convenience key was removed from the vehicle when the engine was running. If the convenience key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or start the engine once you stop it. In addition, you cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Please press brake pedal

This message appears if you do not press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Please select N or P

This message appears when starting or stopping the engine if the selector lever is not in the N or P position. The engine will not start/stop.

Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors can be locked only in P

This message appears for safety reasons along with a warning tone. It appears if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P position when switching the ignition off with the START ENGINE STOP button. Shift the selector lever to the P position. Otherwise, the vehicle could roll. You also cannot lock the vehicle using the locking sensor on the door handle or using the convenience key.

Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

It may not be possible to start the engine under certain circumstances, for example if the battery in the vehicle key is drained, if interference is affected the key or if there is a system malfunction.



Fig. 61 Steering column/remote control key: starting the engine if there is a malfunction

As long as the message **Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual** is displayed, you can emergency start your vehicle.

- Press the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠ *in Starting the engine on page 59*.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Hold the master key in the location indicated as shown in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 61*. The engine will start.
- If the engine does not automatically start, press the START ENGINE STOP button again.

Tips

You can view the message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Electromechanical parking brake

Operating

The electromechanical parking brake replaces the hand brake.



Fig. 62 Center console: parking brake

- Pull the switch ⇨ *fig. 62* to set the parking brake. The PARK (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) indicator lights turn on in the button and in the Infotainment system display.
- To release the parking brake, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on and press the button at the same time. The PARK (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) indicator lights turn on in the button and in the display.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

In addition to the normal functions of a traditional hand brake, the electromechanical parking brake provides various convenience and safety functions.

When starting from rest

– The integral hill start assist helps you when driving by automatically releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 62, Starting from a stop*.
– When starting on inclines, the hill start assist prevents the vehicle from unintentionally rolling back. The braking force of the parking brake is not released until sufficient driving force has been built up at the wheels.

Emergency brake function

An emergency braking function ensures that the vehicle can be slowed down even if the *normal* brakes fail ⇨ *page 62, Emergency braking function*.

Indicator lights

– If the parking brake is set when the ignition is **switched on**, the (P) indicator lights in the display and in the button turn on.
– If the parking brake is set when the ignition is **switched off**, the (P) indicator lights in the display and in the button turn on for approximately 20 seconds.

WARNING

– Do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently if the vehicle is stationary but the engine is running and a gear is selected. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately and could result in a crash.
– If the power supply fails, the released parking brake can no longer engage. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by placing the selector lever in the P position. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

– If the parking brake is set while the ignition is switched off, the (P) indicator light in the button and in the instrument cluster display PARK (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) will turn off after a certain amount of time. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If driver's door is opened while the ignition is switched on, the parking brake sets automatically. This prevents unintended rolling of the vehicle.
– Occasional noises when the parking brake is applied and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– When the vehicle is parked, the parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals. Any noises associated with this are normal.
– If the PARK (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) indicator lights or indicator light turn on, there could be a malfunction in the parking brake ⇨ *page 11*.
– If there is a power failure, the parking brake will not set if it is released, and it will not release if it is set ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Parking

▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
▸ Pull the switch (P) to set the parking brake.
▸ Place the selector lever in the P position.
▸ Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

⚠ WARNING

– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows). There is the risk of an accident.
– When the vehicle is locked, no one - particularly not children should remain in the vehicle. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Starting from a stop

The start assist function ensures that the parking brake is released automatically upon starting.

Stopping and applying parking brake

▸ Pull the switch (P) to set the parking brake.

Starting and automatically releasing the parking brake

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the driver's safety belt must be fastened.

▸ When you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake is automatically released and your vehicle begins to move.

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic, the parking brake can be applied. The vehicle does not have to be held with the brake pedal. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep when a selector lever position is engaged. As soon as you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake releases automatically and the vehicle starts to move.

Starting on slopes

When starting on inclines, the hill start assist prevents the vehicle from unintentionally rolling back. The braking force of the parking brake is not released until sufficient driving force has been built up at the wheels.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is fastened and the driver's door is locked.

Emergency braking function

In the event that the conventional brake system fails or locks.

▸ To brake your vehicle in an emergency, pull the (P) switch and hold it pulled.
▸ As soon as you release the button or accelerate, the braking stops. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pulling and holding the switch while driving at a speed of about 2 mph (3 km/h) or higher initiates the emergency braking function. The vehicle is braked at all four wheels by activating the hydraulic brake system. The brake performance is similar to heavy braking. ⇨ ⚠

In order not to activate the emergency braking by mistake, an audible warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the switch is pulled. As soon as the switch is released, or the accelerator pedal is depressed, emergency braking stops.

⚠ WARNING

Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the normal brake pedal has failed or the brake pedal is obstructed. During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to break away, which increases the risk of an accident.

Trailer towing

General information

Your Audi TT Coupe is not designed to tow a trailer.

Towing a trailer with your Audi TT Coupe is not recommended and can cause damage to the car. Damaged caused by towing a trailer is not covered by your Audi Warranty.

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic transmission

S tronic

Introduction

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically-controlled DSG transmission called S tronic. Two independent clutches transfer the power between the engine and transmission. It allows the vehicle to accelerate without a noticeable interruption in traction.

The transmission upshifts or downshifts automatically. The driving style continuously influences the selection of the driving program.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. The transmission upshifts at a lower RPM and downshifts at a higher RPM to improve fuel efficiency.

The transmission switches to a sporty mode after a kick-down or when the driver uses a **sporty driving style** characterized by quick accelerator pedal movements, heavy acceleration, frequent changes in speed and traveling at the maximum speed.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)**.

Selector lever positions



Fig. 63 Instrument cluster: selector lever positions

The Infotainment system display shows the current selector lever position and the engaged gear.

P - Park

The wheels are mechanically locked in this position. You can only shift into Park when the vehicle is *stationary* ⇨ ⚠.

To shift in and out of the P selector lever position, press the interlock button in the selector lever *while* pressing the brake pedal.

R – Reverse

Only shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is *stationary* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠.

To select the R selector lever position, press the interlock button *while* pressing the brake pedal. The back-up lights switch on in the R position if the ignition is switched on.

N - Neutral

The transmission is in idle in this position.

D/S - Normal position for driving forward

In the D/S selector lever position, the transmission can be operated either in the normal D mode or in the S sport mode. To select the S sport mode, pull the selector lever back briefly. Pulling the lever back again will select the normal D mode. The selected driving mode is shown in the Infotainment display.

In the **normal mode** D, the transmission automatically selects the suitable gear ratio. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style.

Select the **sport mode** S for sporty driving. The vehicle makes full use of the engine's power. Shifting is may become noticeable when accelerating.

To move from selector lever position N to D, you must press the brake pedal and the vehicle must be traveling less than 1 mph (2 km/h) or be stationary ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS.

– The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Never select R or P while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.
– Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except P) when the engine is running. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident.
– Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stopped if a gear is engaged. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.
– Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
– Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, set the parking brake and move the selector lever to the P position.
– Before opening the hood and working on a running engine, select the P position with the selector lever and activate the parking brake. Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 236, Working in the engine compartment*.

Note

Never let the vehicle roll downhill with engine off and the selector lever in the N position, because this could damage the automatic transmission and catalytic converter.

Tips

– Drive select: sporty shifting characteristics can be selected using the **Dynamic** driving mode. The Infotainment display shows S as the selector lever position instead of D.
– If you accidentally select N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal immediately and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting D or S.
– If there is a power failure, the selector lever will not move out of the P position. The emergency release can be used if this happens. Left-hand drive vehicles ⇨ *page 71*.

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock prevents you from selecting a gear accidentally, causing the vehicle to roll.

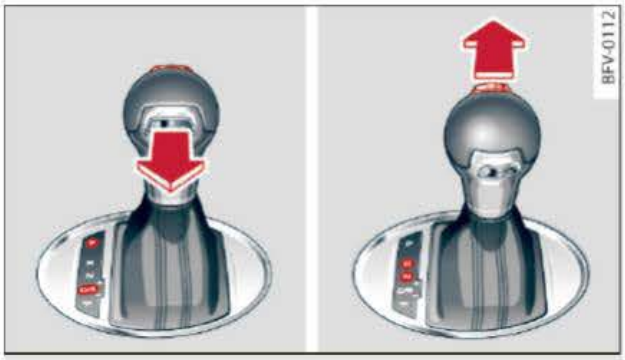


Fig. 64 Selector lever lock

To release the selector lever lock:

▸ Switch on the ignition.
▸ Press the brake pedal *while* pressing the interlock button.

Automatic shift lock (ASL)

The selector lever is locked in the P and N positions when the ignition is switched on. You must press the brake pedal to select another position. You must also press the interlock button if you are moving from the P position. The following message appears in the display when the selector lever is in the P or N position to remind the driver:

To select a gear, please press brake pedal and press lock button on selector lever

The automatic shift lock only functions when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h). At higher speeds, the lock is automatically deactivated in the N position.

The selector lever is not locked when shifting quickly through N, for example from R to D. This makes it possible to free the vehicle when it is stuck by "rocking" it. The selector lever lock engages if the lever stays in the N position longer than approximately 2 seconds when the brake pedal is not pressed. ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interlock button

The interlock button in the selector lever handle prevents you from moving the selector lever inadvertently while in some selector lever positions. The positions that require the lock button to be pressed are marked in color in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 64*.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS. ⇨ ⚠ *in Selector lever positions on page 64*.

Tips

– If the selector lever does not engage, there is a malfunction. The engine is disabled to prevent the vehicle from driving off unintentionally. To allow the selector lever to engage again, proceed as follows:
– Briefly press the brake pedal.
– If the vehicle does not move forward or in reverse even though a drive position is selected, proceed as follows:
– >If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the system may not have engaged the drive position correctly. Press the brake pedal and select the drive position again.
– >If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, there is a system malfunction. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance to have the system checked.

Driving tips

The transmission shifts up and down automatically when in the driving gears.



Fig. 65 Section of the center console: selector lever with interlock button

The engine will only be able start when the selector lever is in the P or N positions. At low temperatures (below 14 °F (-10 °C)), the engine can only be started when the selector lever is in the P position.

Starting from a stop

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Press and hold the interlock button in the selector lever handle, select the desired selector lever position such as D ⇨ *page 64* and release the lock button.
- Wait a moment until the transmission shifts. You will notice a slight movement when the gear engages.
- Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal ⇨ ⚠.

Stopping temporarily

- Keep the vehicle stationary using the braking pedal, for example at traffic lights.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
- To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep inclines ⇨ ⚠.
- The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal.

Stopping/parking

If the selector lever is not in the P position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll. In vehicles with a convenience key*, the message: **Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors can be locked only in P** appears. You will also hear a warning tone.

- Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the P selector lever position.

Stopping on an incline

- *Always* press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle in place and prevent it from "rolling back" ⇨ ⚠. Do **not** try to prevent the vehicle from "rolling back" when a gear is engaged by increasing the engine speed ⇨ (!). ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting on a hill

- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ With the driving gear selected, press the accelerator pedal carefully. The parking brake will release automatically if your safety belt is fastened.

Under certain circumstances, such as driving in the mountains, it may be useful to switch temporarily to the manual shift program in order to manually adjust the gears to the driving conditions ⇨ *page 68*.

When parking on a level surface, simply place the selector lever in the P position. On inclines, activate the parking brake first and then move the selector lever to the P position ⇨ *page 61*. This prevents the locking mechanism from being loaded too heavily and will make it easier to move the selector lever out of the P position.

WARNING

- The vehicle can roll even when the engine is switched off.
- Unintended vehicle movement can lead to serious injuries.
- Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, set the parking brake and move the selector lever to the P position.
- Power is still transferred to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake when the engine is running and the selector lever is in the D, S or R position or "tiptronic" mode is selected.
- Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
- Never engage the R or P selector level positions while driving. It could cause a crash.
- Before driving down a steep slope, reduce your speed and shift into a lower gear with "tiptronic".
- Do not ride the brakes or press the brake pedal too often or too long when driving down a hill. Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.
- If you must stop on an incline, always hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake or parking brake to prevent it from rolling back.
- Never hold the vehicle on an incline with a slipping clutch. The clutch opens automatically when it becomes too hot from the overload. The indicator light turns on and a message appears ⇨ *page 70* when the clutch is overloaded.
- If the engine must run while you are working in the engine compartment with the hood open, make sure a gear is not engaged. The selector lever must be firmly in the P position and locked in place and the parking brake must be set ⇨ *page 236*. Otherwise, the vehicle could begin moving when increasing the engine speed, even with the parking brake set.

Note

- When stopping on an incline, do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal while a driving gear is selected. This can cause the automatic transmission to overheat and can damage it. Activate the parking brake or press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped and the selector lever is in the N position will damage the automatic transmission because it is not lubricated under those circumstances. ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The transmission can overheat and be damaged under certain driving and traffic conditions such as frequent starts, creeping for a long time, or stop-and-go traffic. When the or indicator light turns on, stop the vehicle at the next opportunity and let the transmission cool ⇨ *page 70*.
– Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped will damage the S tronic transmission because it is not lubricated ⇨ *page 290, Towing with a tow truck*.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is engaged in the buckle.

Hill descent control

The hill descent control system assists the driving when driving down declines.

Hill descent control is activated when the selector lever is in the D or S position and you press the brake pedal. The transmission automatically selects a gear that is suitable for the incline. Hill descent control tries to maintain the speed achieved at the time of braking, within physical and technical limitations. If may still be necessary to adjust the speed with the brakes. Because hill descent control cannot shift down farther than 3rd gear, it may be necessary to shift into tiptronic mode in very steep areas. In this case, shift into 1st or 2nd gear in tiptronic mode to use the engine's braking force to relieve the brakes.

Hill descent control switches off once the decline levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with a cruise control system* ⇨ *page 72*, hill descent control is also activated when the speed is set.

WARNING

Hill descent control cannot overcome physical limitations, so it may not be able to maintain a constant speed under all conditions. Always be ready to apply the brakes.

Shifting manually (tiptronic mode)

The tiptronic allow the driver to shift the gears manually.

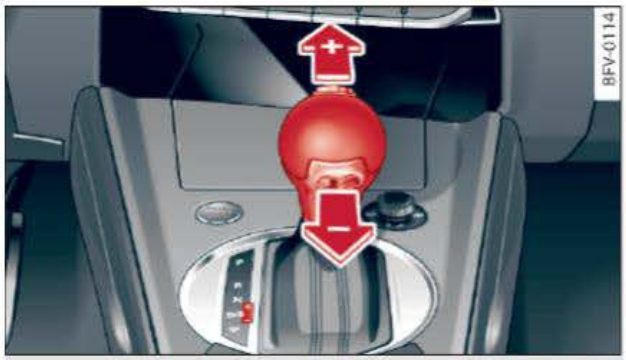


Fig. 66 Center console: manual shifting with the selector lever



Fig. 67 Steering wheel: manual shifting with the shift paddles*

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into tiptronic mode while stationary and while driving.

- ▸ To shift into tiptronic mode, push the selector lever from the D/S setting to the right in the tiptronic shift gate. Once the transmission has switched modes, the selector lever position **M** is shown in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *page 64, fig. 63*. For example **M4** means the fourth gear is engaged.
- ▸ To shift up a gear, tap the selector lever forward ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 66*.
- ▸ To shift down a gear, tap the selector lever to back ⊖.

Shifting with the shift paddles*

You can operate the shift paddles in the D/S or **M** (tiptronic shift gate) selector lever positions.

- ▸ To shift up one gear, tap the shift paddle ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 67*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ To shift down one gear, tap the shift paddle ⊖.

If the shift paddles are tapped while in the D/S selector lever position, automatic mode switches off briefly. To switch from manually shifting back to automatic shifting immediately, tap the shift paddle ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 67* for 1 second.

To keep shifting using the shift paddles, move the selector lever to the right out of the D/S position into the tiptronic shift gate.

The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.

Tips

– If you shift to the next lowest gear, the transmission will only shift if the engine will not be over-revved.
– With kick-down, the transmission shifts to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed and engine speed.
– tiptronic does not work if the transmission is running in emergency mode.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance point, the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed and engine RPM. It shifts up into the next higher gear once the maximum specified engine RPM is reached.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

Launch Control-Program

The Launch Control Program enables maximum acceleration.

Requirement: the engine must be at operating temperature and the steering wheel must not be turned.

▸ With the engine running, press the OFF button briefly one time [1].
▸ Pull the selector lever back out of the D/S position briefly to select the S position, or press it toward the right into the tiptronic position or select the **Dynamic** driving mode in drive select* ⇨ *page 79*.
▸ Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it all the way down for at least 1 second.
▸ At the same time, press the gas pedal all the way down with your right foot until the engine reaches and stays at a high RPM level.
▸ Remove your left foot from the brake.

WARNING

– Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.
– Only use Launch Control when road and traffic conditions allow it and other drivers will not be endangered or impacted by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.
– Please note that the drive wheels can spin and the vehicle can break away when sport mode is switched on, especially when the road is slippery.
– Once the vehicle has started moving, press the OFF button briefly to turn the sport mode off.

Tips

– The transmission temperature may increase significantly after using the launch control program. If that happens, the program may not be available for a few minutes. It will be available again after a cool-down period. ▸

[1] The ESC light turns on continuously and the message **Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Reduced stability** appears temporarily to indicate in the Infotainment system that the system was deactivated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– When accelerating using the launch control program, all vehicle parts are subject to heavy loads. This can lead to increased wear.

Emergency mode

In the event of a system malfunction, there is an emergency program.

If all of the selector lever positions are highlighted with a light background in the Infotainment display, there is a system malfunction and the S tronic transmission is running in the emergency program. The vehicle can still be driven in emergency mode, but only with reduced speed and not in all gears. In some cases, the vehicle **cannot drive in reverse**.

Note

If the transmission runs in emergency mode, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction

Transmission: malfunction! Please stop vehicle and shift to P

There is a malfunction in the transmission. Park the vehicle securely and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: too hot. Please stop vehicle

The transmission is too hot and can become damaged. Stop and let the transmission cool with the engine running (at idle) in the P selector lever position. Then the indicator light and the message turn off, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. If the indicator light and the driver message do not turn off, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving. See owner's manual

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You may continue driving. No reverse gear

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You may continue driving in D until engine off

Drive the vehicle away from moving traffic and park. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: too hot. Please adapt driving style

Continue driving moderately. When the indicator light turns off, you can continue driving normally.

Transmission: please press brake pedal and select gear again

If the transmission malfunctions because the temperature is too high, a message appears when the transmission is cooled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selector lever emergency release

If the vehicle's power supply fails, the selector lever can be released in an emergency.



Fig. 68 Selector lever: removing the cover

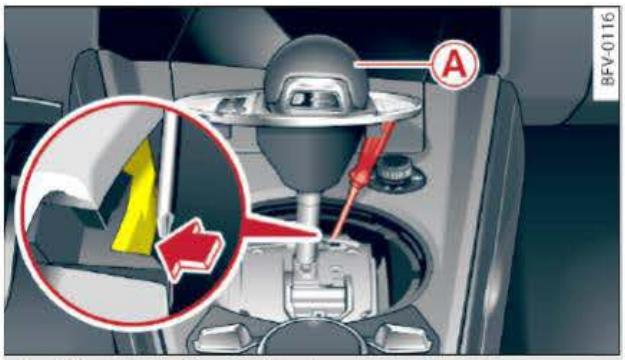


Fig. 69 Selector lever: using the emergency release to move out of the Park position

This section describes using the selector lever emergency release in left-hand drive vehicles.

The emergency release mechanism is located in the right area under the selector lever shift gate. Using the emergency release can be complicated. We recommend contacting your authorized Audi dealer for assistance, if necessary.

The screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit located in the luggage compartment is needed to for the emergency release ⇨ *page 275*. Use the flat side of the reversible screwdriver blade.

Removing the selector lever cover

- Set the parking brake (P) ⇨ ⚠ to secure your vehicle from rolling.
- Insert the flat side of the screwdriver sideways in the slot near the shift cover and pry the shift cover up ⇨ *fig. 68*.
- Carefully pull the shift cover upward by hand and fold it over the shifter knob ⇨ *fig. 69*.

Selector lever emergency release

- Press and hold the yellow release button with the screwdriver ⇨ *fig. 69*.
- Press the release button in the selector lever (A) and move the lever into the N position.
- Clip the shift cover back into the shift gate after using the emergency release.

If the vehicle must be pushed or towed due to a power failure (for example, the battery is dead), the selector lever must first be moved to the N position using the emergency release mechanism.

⚠ WARNING

Only move the selector lever out of the P position when the parking brake is set. If that does not work, secure the vehicle with the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle could start to move unintentionally when the selector lever is moved out of the P position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Assist

Electronic speed limiter

Your vehicle may be factory equipped with tires that are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control if the vehicle is operated at excessive speeds, your vehicle also has an electronic speed limiter. The electronic speed limiter prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. For more information ⇨ *page 257*.

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle road speed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

WARNING

Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed.

Speed warning system

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps you to stay under a specified maximum speed.

The speed warning system warns you if you are exceeding the maximum speed that you have set. You will hear a warning tone when your speed exceeds the stored value by approximately 3 mph (3 km/h). The indicator light turns on at the same time in the Infotainment display. The indicator light turns off when the speed decreases below the stored maximum speed.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

Setting the threshold

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

You can set, change and delete the warning threshold in the Infotainment system.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Speed warning**.

You can set any threshold between 20 mph (30 km/h) and 150 mph (240 km/h). Settings can each be adjusted in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h).

Cruise control system

Switching on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system makes it possible to drive at a constant speed starting at 15 mph (20 km/h).



Fig. 70 Operating lever: cruise control system

- To switch on the system, pull the lever into position (1) ⇨ *fig. 70*.
- Drive at the speed to be controlled.
- To store the speed, press the button (A).

The stored speed and the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light are displayed in the instrument cluster. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The speed is kept constant by modifying engine power or through an active brake intervention.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to the traffic around you when the cruise control is in operation. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- For reasons of safety, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning) - you could have an accident.
- Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or in construction zones.
- Please note that unconsciously "resting" your foot on the accelerator pedal prevents the cruise control from braking. This is due to the control system being overridden by the driver's acceleration.
- If a brake system malfunction such as overheating occurs when the cruise control system is switched on, the braking function in the system may be switched off. The rest of the cruise control system functions remain active as long as the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light is on.

Tips

The brake lights illuminate as soon as the brakes apply automatically.

Changing speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- To increase/decrease the speed in xx mph (1 km/h) increments, briefly **tap** the lever up/down in the ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 72, fig. 70* direction to the first level.
- To increase/decrease the speed in xx mph (10 km/h) increments, briefly **tap** the lever up/down in the ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 72, fig. 70* direction to the second level.
- To increase or decrease the speed quickly, **hold** the lever in the ⊕ / ⊖ direction until the desired speed is reached.

Overriding the speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can press the accelerator pedal down to increase your speed, for example if you want to pass someone. The speed you saved earlier will resume as soon as you let off of the accelerator pedal.

However, if you are exceeding the stored speed by a considerable amount for a long time, the cruise control system will temporarily switch off. The CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off and the stored speed is maintained.

Preselecting the speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can pre-select your desired speed while the vehicle is not moving.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Pull the lever into position ① ⇨ *page 72, fig. 70*.
- To increase or decrease the speed, tap the lever in the ⊕/⊖ direction.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the speed you want before driving on the highway. Once on the expressway, activate the cruise control by pulling the lever into position ①.

Switching off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Temporary deactivation

- Step on the brake pedal, or
- Press the lever in direction ② (not locked into place) ⇨ *page 72, fig. 70*.

Switching off completely

- Press the lever into position ② (clicked into place), or
- switch the ignition off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The speed you saved will be retained if the cruise control has been switched off temporarily. To resume the stored speed, release the brake or clutch pedal and pull the lever to position ①.

Switching the ignition off will erase the stored speed.

WARNING

You should only resume the saved speed if it is not too high for existing traffic conditions. Otherwise you risk an accident.

Audi active lane assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

Active lane assist detects lane marker lines within the limits of the system using a camera in the windshield. If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system will warn you with corrective steering. You can override this steering at any time. If you pass over a line, the steering wheel will vibrate lightly. In order for this warning vibration to occur, it must first be switched on in the Infotainment system. Active lane assist is operable when the lane marker line is detected on at least one side of the vehicle.

The system is designed for driving on expressways and highways and therefore only activates at speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h) (depending on the market).

Applies to vehicles with side assist*: if you activate a turn signal when active lane assist is ready and it classifies a lane change as critical because of vehicles traveling alongside you or approaching you, there will be noticeable corrective steering shortly before you leave the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

Applies to vehicles without side assist*: the system does not warn when it is ready if you activate the turn signal before crossing the lane marker line. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

WARNING

- The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane, but it does not drive by itself. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.
- Corrective steering may not occur in certain situations, such as during heavy braking.
- There may be cases where the camera does not recognize all lane marker lines. Corrective steering can only take place on the side of the vehicle where lane marker lines are detected.
- Other road structures or objects could possibly be identified unintentionally as lane marker lines. As a result, corrective steering may be unexpected or may not occur.
- The camera view can be restricted, for example by vehicles driving ahead or by rain, snow, heavy spray light shining into the camera or by dirt on the window. This can result in active lane assist not detecting the lane marker lines or detecting them incorrectly.
- In certain situations where visibility is low, the vehicle may switch internally from “early” to “late” steering correction [1].
- Under certain conditions such as ruts in the road, an inclined roadway or crosswinds, the corrective steering alone may not be enough to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.
- For safety reasons, active lane assist must not be used when there are poor road and/or weather conditions such as slippery roads, fog, gravel, heavy rain, snow and the potential for hydroplaning. Using active lane assist under these conditions may increase the risk of a crash.

[1] The corrective steering function is not available in all markets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist



Fig. 71 Turn signal lever: button for active lane assist

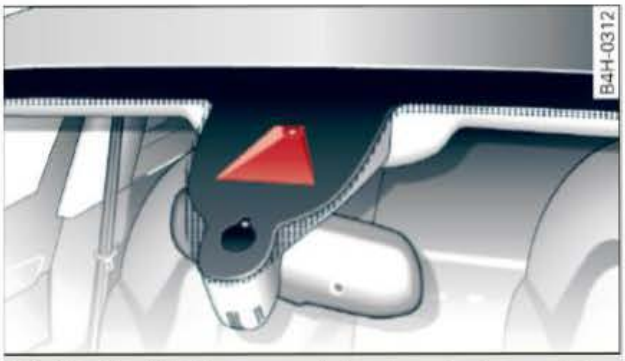


Fig. 72 Windshield: camera window for active lane assist

▸ Press the ⇨ *fig. 71* button to switch the system on and off. The or indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on or off.

Indicator lights

Ready: the indicator light turns on when the system is ready for use. The system can now be operated.

Not ready: the indicator light turns on if the system is switched on but is inoperable. This may be due to the following reasons:

– There is no lane boundary line.
– The relevant lane marker lines are not detected (for example, markings in a construction zone or because they are obstructed by snow, dirt, water or lighting).
– The vehicle speed is below the activation speed of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h) (the speed may vary depending on your country).
– The lane is narrower than approximately 8 ft (2.5 m) or wider than approximately 18 ft (5.5 m).
– The curve is too narrow.
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel.

Tips

– Make sure the camera's field of view ⇨ *fig. 72* is not obstructed by stickers or anything else. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 270*.
– Market-specific: in certain countries: if the system is switched on, it will remain operable each time the ignition is switched on.

Indicator in Infotainment display

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist



Fig. 73 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on and providing warnings

You can call up the active lane assist display using the buttons in the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 19*.

Green line(s)	Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings.
Red line(s) (left or right)	Active lane assist warns you before leaving a lane ⇨ *fig. 73*. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates lightly.
Gray line(s)	lane assist is activated, but not ready to give warning

Messages in Infotainment display

If the active lane assist switches off automatically, the indicator light in the display turns off and one of the following messages appears:

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted. See owner's manual

This message appears if the camera is unable to detect the lines. This could happen if: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The camera field of view ⇨ *page 75, fig. 72* is dirty or covered in ice. Clean this area on the windshield.
– The camera field of view is fogged over. Wait until the fog has cleared before switching the active lane assist on again.
– The system has been unable to detect the lanes for an extended period of time due to road conditions. Switch the active lane assist back on when the lines are more visible.

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

There is a temporary active lane assist malfunction. Try switching the active lane assist on again later.

Audi active lane assist: malfunction! See owner's manual

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi active lane assist: Please take over steering!

This message appears if you are not steering by yourself. If this is the case, active lane assist does not switch off, but it is "not ready" to provide a warning. The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane. However, you are responsible for driving the vehicle and must steer it yourself.

Adjusting the steering time and vibration warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

You can adjust individual active lane assist settings in the Infotainment system.

Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Audi active lane assist**

Steering time[1)]

Early: in this setting, the corrective steering happens continuously to help keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Late: in this setting, the system provides corrective steering just before a vehicle wheel touches a detected lane marker line.

Vibration warning

You can switch the additional vibrating warning in the steering wheel on or off.

Tips

Market-specific: your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Audi side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

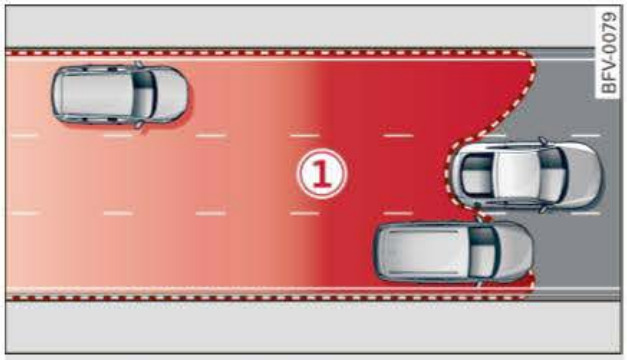


Fig. 74 Sensor detection range



Fig. 75 Display on the exterior mirror

Side assist helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of ▶

[1)] The corrective steering function is not available in all markets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with you within sensor range (1) ⇨ *fig. 74*: if a lane change is classified as critical, the display (2) in the exterior mirror ⇨ *fig. 75* turns on.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist *informs* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the mirror turns on, but is dim.

The display remains dim in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

Warning stage

If you activate the turn signal, side assist *warns* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the respective mirror blinks brightly. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the rearview mirror and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 78*.

Tips

You can adjust the brightness on of the display on the rearview mirror ⇨ *page 79*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

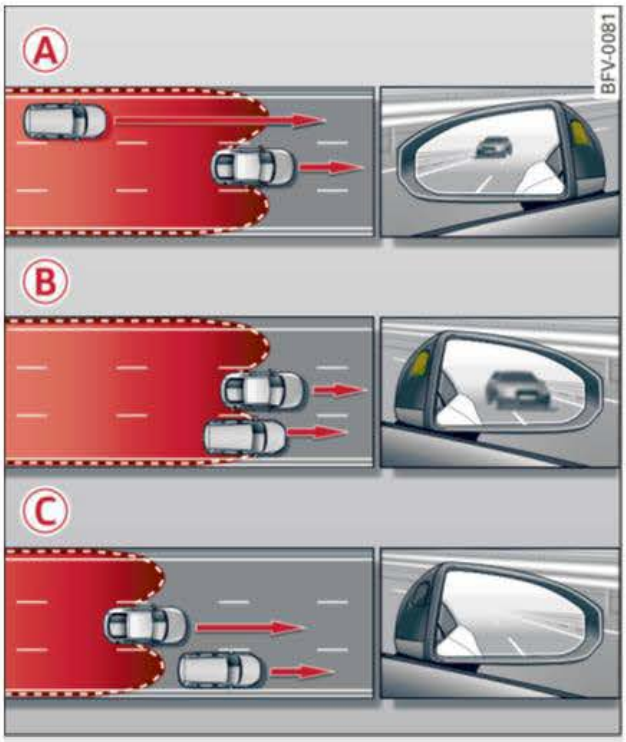


Fig. 76 Driving situations



Fig. 77 Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors (example)

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

(A) Vehicles that are approaching

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

(B) Vehicles traveling with you

Vehicles traveling with you are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

are indicated by the time they enter your "blind spot", at the latest.

© Vehicles left behind

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than 9 mph or 15 km/h), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is greater than 9 mph or 15 km/h).

Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example:

- If the lanes are narrow or if your are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the system may have detected the vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
- If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
- If side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
- In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 77* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because this will affect the function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 270*.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers.
- In some situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example:
  - If vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
  - In poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
  - On very wide lanes, in tight curves, or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.
- Audi side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions, which can increase the risk of accidents.
- Please note that side assist only displays approaching vehicles or vehicles in your blind spot if your vehicle is traveling at least 19 mph (30 km/h).
- In certain situations, the system may not work or its function may be limited. For example:
  - The display may not turn on at the right time if vehicles are approaching or passing very quickly.
  - In poor weather conditions, such as heavy rain, snow or fog.
  - In very wide lanes, in tight curves or when there are slopes in the roadway, vehicles in the neighboring lanes may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can affect the system. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

- If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be misinterpreted.
- For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, refer to ⇨ *page 297*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The system can be switched on/off in the Infotainment system.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**

An activated system will signal every time the ignition is switched on by turning the displays in the exterior mirrors on briefly.

Adjusting the display brightness

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The display brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the display is already set to the minimum or maximum level by the automatic adjustment. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change.

Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view forward. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage adjustment.

Tips

- Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If the side assist switches off automatically, a message appears in the Infotainment system display.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. Sensor vision restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The radar sensors' vision is affected. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area in front of the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 77, fig. 77*.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

Side assist cannot be switched on temporarily because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

Audi side assist: malfunction! Please contact Service

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it is switched off. The sensors have been displaced or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

Audi drive select (drive settings)

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle settings in one vehicle. The driver can select from three modes, **Comfort**, **Auto** and **Dynamic**, using the drive select button in the center console or by using the Infotainment system. This allows you to switch between a sporty and a comfortable driving mode, for example. In the **Individual** mode, the settings can be adjusted to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine tuning with light steering. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Using Audi drive select incorrectly can lead to collisions, other accidents and serious injuries.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The vehicle setup in each mode depends on the vehicle's features. However, the engine and steering are always affected.

Engine and automatic transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and automatic transmission respond more quickly or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements.

Adaptive dampers (Audi magnetic ride)*

The adaptive dampers use sensors to record information regarding steering movements, braking and acceleration operations by the driver, road surface, driving speed, and load. With drive select, you can adjust the adaptive dampers to sporty (dynamic), comfortable (comfort) or balanced (auto).

Steering

The power steering adapts. Indirect steering that moves easily as in comfort mode is especially suited to long drives on a highway. The dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

Cruise control system*

The acceleration performance is especially fuel-efficient in efficiency* mode.

Engine sound*

The engine sound is adapted to the applied mode and can be subtle to sporty.

Tips

In some models, the maximum vehicle speed can only be reached in the auto and dynamic modes.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can select between efficiency, comfort, auto, dynamic and individual.*



Fig. 78 Center console: drive select button



Fig. 79 Infotainment: drive select

- Press the button ⇨ *fig. 78* or
- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Audi drive select**.
- Select the desired setting by moving the cursor (red frame).

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine.

Comfort - results in a comfort-oriented vehicle calibration

Auto - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

Dynamic - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

Individual - ⇨ *page 81*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic when operating the drive select to prevent potential risk of an accident.

Adjusting the Individual mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can adjust the vehicle settings to your personal preferences.

- Press the button ⇨ *page 80, fig. 78* > **Individual** > right control button, or
- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button>**Audi drive select** > **Individual** > right control button

After you have closed the settings, you are automatically driving in the **Individual*** driving mode.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust. The following table gives an overview of the characteristics.

Systems	comfort	auto	dynamic
Engine and **Transmission**	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Steering	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Damper control*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Engine sound*	subtle	balanced	sporty
quattro*	comfortable	balanced	sporty

Tips

Your **Individual*** mode settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking systems

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking system/parking system plus

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **rear parking system** is an audible parking aid that warns you of obstacles *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 82*.

The **parking system plus** assists you when parking by audibly and visually indicating objects detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 83*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. The lines in the rearview camera image help you to park or maneuver ⇨ *page 84*. The parking system plus functions are also available ⇨ *page 83*.

WARNING

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible when entering or leaving a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of small children and animals.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking system may become impaired as a result. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
- Make sure the sensors are not obstructed by stickers, deposits or other materials. If they are, the sensor function could be impaired. For additional information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 270*.

Note

- Some objects are not detected or displayed by the system under certain circumstances:
  - Objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - Objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - Objects with specific surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow
- If you continue driving closer to a low-lying object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.
- Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.

Tips

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or for long grass.
  - external ultrasonic sources e.g. from cleaning vehicles.
  - heavy rain, snow, or thick vehicle exhaust.
- We recommend that you practice parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume of the signals.
- What appears in the display is slightly delayed.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for the park assist to operate.

Rear parking system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking assist

The rear parking system is an audible parking aid.

Description

There is a sensor in the rear bumper cover. If these detect an obstacle, audible signals warn you. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 270*.

The range at which the sensors begin to measure is approximately:

rear	side	3 ft (0.90 m)
	center	5.2 ft (1.60 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue backing up ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 82*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 82*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this is not apply in the continuous tone range).

Activating

The rear parking assist activates automatically when the reverse gear is engaged. You will hear a brief confirmation tone.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

The parking system plus provides audio and visual signals when parking.

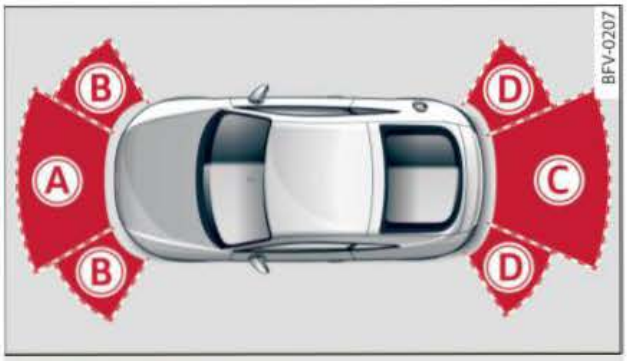


Fig. 80 Illustration:

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 270*.

The display field begins approximately at:

Ⓐ	4 ft (1.20 m)
Ⓑ	3 ft (0.90 m)
Ⓒ	5.2 ft (1.60 m)
Ⓓ	3 ft (0.90 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 82*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 82*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this is not apply in the continuous tone range).

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus



Fig. 81 Center console: parking aid button



Fig. 82 optical distance display

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 81*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- switch the ignition off.

Segments in the visual display

The segments in front of and behind the vehicle (vehicles with parking system plus*) ⇨ *fig. 82* help you to determine the distance between your vehicle and an obstacle. The red lines mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 82*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 82*!

Rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

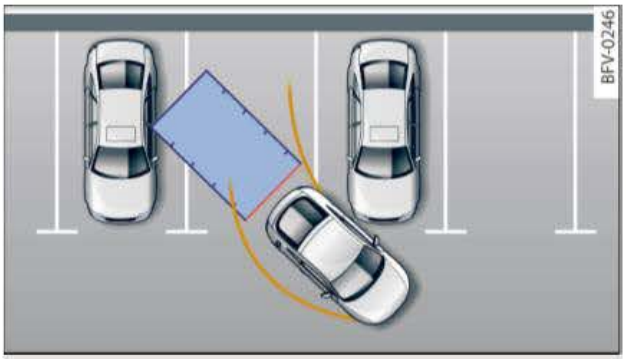


Fig. 83 Diagram: lines to aid in parking

The rearview camera helps you to park or maneuver using the orientation lines.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

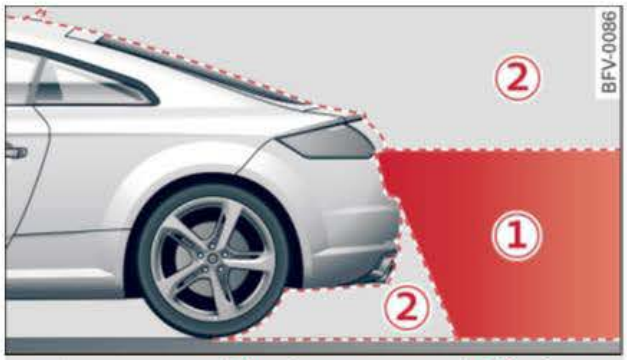


Fig. 84 Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera.



Fig. 85 Luggage compartment lid: location of the rearview camera

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the parking system ⇨ *fig. 85* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this can impair the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 270*.

The rearview camera coverage area includes ① ⇨ *fig. 84*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are outside of this area ② are not displayed.

The accuracy of the orientation lines and the blue surfaces is reduced if the vehicle is raised or if the **Dynamic** mode is activated ⇨ *page 79*.

⚠ WARNING

– Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 82*.
– If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example, after a collision, do not continue to ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens or if there is a defect.
– Use the rearview camera only if the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
– The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen.
– In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or further away:
  – For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the help lines in this case.
  – If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
  – If driven toward protruding objects.
  – If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

Note

– Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *in General information on page 82*.
– The orange colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path depending on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle front swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that your outside mirror or a corner of your vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

Switching on

▸ Shift into reverse, or
▸ Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *page 83, fig. 81*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

▸ Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
▸ Press the P button, or
▸ switch the ignition off.

Tips

– The visual display in the left part of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle areas.
– You can change the volume and display for the signals ⇨ *page 86*.

Cross parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

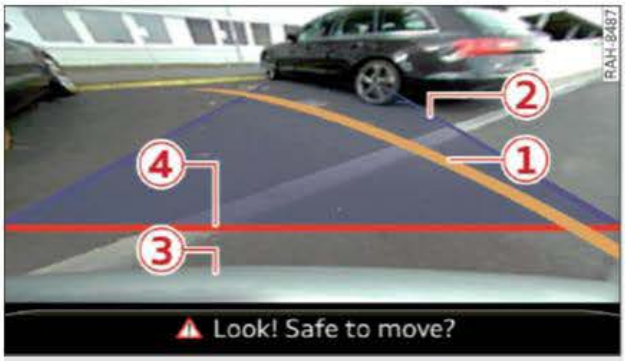


Fig. 86 Infotainment: aiming at a parking space



Fig. 87 Infotainment: aligning the vehicle

▸ Turn the Infotainment on and shift into reverse gear.
▸ The orange orientation lines ① show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 86*. Use the markings (2) to help you estimate the distance from an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear.

- While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 84*, ⇨ (!) *in General information on page 85*. (3) displays the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle, at the latest, when the red orientation line (4) borders an object.

Adjusting the display and the warning tones

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

The display and warning tones can be adjusted in the Infotainment.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Parking aid**.

Warning tones

Front volume - volume for the front area

Rear volume - volume for the rear area

Entertainment fader - when the parking system is turned on, the volume of the audio/video source is lowered.

The newly selected level is demonstrated briefly by the sound generator.

Tips

The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

Error messages

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking system/parking system plus

Rear parking aid: malfunction! Obstacles not detected

Front parking aid: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected

Parking aid: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected

There is a system malfunction if the LED in the P button blinks when switching on the system. If the error is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, the LED in the P button will blink the next time you switch on the parking system by shifting into reverse. As long as the error is active, you can display the error messages in the second tab of the driver information system.

Parking system plus*

If a sensor or speaker is faulty, the P symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas (A) and (B) are shown ⇨ *page 83, fig. 80*. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas (C) and (D) are shown.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Intelligent Technology

Electronic stabilization control (ESC)

Description

The Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) reinforces driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations such as the vehicle oversteering and understeering or the wheels are spinning. The vehicle is stabilized by applying the brakes or reducing engine torque. Once the ESC is activated, the indicator light blinks in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the force to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up inclines.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

EDL applies the brakes to a wheel that starts spinning and transfers the drive power to the other driving wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still working correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Steering recommendation

The ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle by changing the steering torque.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. The front wheel on the inside of the curve or both wheels on the inside of the curve are braked selectively as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves. The applicable system may not activate when driving in wet or snowy conditions.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The "Automatic post-collision braking system" can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of other collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision above a certain vehicle speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if:

- the driver presses the accelerator pedal, or
- the braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system, or
- the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle electrical system are not functioning.

WARNING

- The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits posed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
- Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. The ESC and ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!

– Press the accelerator pedal carefully when accelerating on even, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels are equipped with identical tires. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.

– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Switching on and off

ESC turns on automatically when you start the engine.



Fig. 88 Upper center console, OFF button

The ESC is designed to function in levels. Depending on the level that is selected, the stabilization function of the ESC is limited or switched off. The amount of stabilization control will differ depending on the level.

The following examples are unusual situations where it may make sense to switch sport mode on in order to allow the wheels to spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow or on loose ground
– Driving with snow chains

	Sport mode on	ESC/ASR off	Sport mode off or ESC/ASR on
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The stabilization function is not available ⇨ ⚠. ESC and ASR are switched off.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the OFF button briefly.	Press and hold the OFF button longer than 3 seconds.	Press the OFF button again.
Indicator lights	turns on.	and ESC OFF* turn on.	turns off or and ESC OFF* turns on.
Driver messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): off. Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): on**

WARNING

You should only switch sport mode on or switch ESC/ASR off if your driving abilities and road conditions permit.

– The stabilization function is limited when sport mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– There is no vehicle stabilization when ESC/ASR are switched off.

Tips

– When the cruise control system is switched on, ESC/ASR cannot be switched off or sport mode cannot be switched on.
– Malfunctions in the rear spoiler or the Audi magnetic ride may make it impossible to switch the ESC/ASR off or to switch sport mode on.

Brakes

New brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be "broken in" first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Wear

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. This is especially true if you are driving frequently in the city and on curves or with a sporty driving style.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Effect of water and road salt

In certain situations, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, after overnight condensation or after washing your car, the braking effect can be reduced by moisture or ice on the brake rotors and brake pads. The brakes must be "dried" first with a few careful brake applications.

At higher speeds and with the windshield wipers turned on, the brake pads press against the brake rotors for a short amount of time. This action which is not felt by the driver happens at regular intervals and facilitates a better reaction time for the brakes in wet weather.

The braking effect can also be reduced if you are driving on salted roads and you do not apply the brakes for long periods of time. The layer of salt on the brake rotors and pads must be worn off first when the brakes are applied.

Corrosion

Leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, low mileage and avoiding heavy braking can contribute to corrosion on the brake rotors and dirty brake pads.

If you usually avoid heavy braking or if there is corrosion present, occasional heavy braking at high speeds is recommended to clean the brake rotors and pads ⇨ ⚠.

Brake system malfunction

if you notice that the brake pedal travel has *suddenly* gotten larger, then a brake circuit may have failed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the problem corrected. On the way there, drive with reduced speed and keep in mind that a long braking distance and increased pressure on the brake pedal will be necessary.

Low brake fluid level

When the brake fluid level is low, malfunctions in the brake system may occur. The brake fluid level is electronically monitored.

Brake booster

The brake booster amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It only works when the engine is running.

⚠ WARNING

– New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be "broken in" first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users. This increases the risk of an accident.
– On steep slopes, reduce the speed and select a lower gear or lower selector lever position. Drive as little as possible while pressing the brake pedal and avoid putting your left foot on the brake pedal while driving. This could cause the brakes to overheat and impair the efficiency of the brakes.
– Do not let the brakes "grind" by always keeping your foot on the brake pedal. This can cause the brakes to overheat, increase wear and increase braking distance unnecessarily.
– Certain weather and operating conditions such as driving through water, driving in heavy rain or driving after washing your vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the brakes. In the winter, ice may build up on the brake pads, rotors and drums. Check these components by braking carefully. Applying the brakes carefully several times dries the brakes and removes ice build-up.
– The efficiency of the brakes can also be impaired by driving for long stretches on roads covered with salt without using the brakes. You can remove salt deposits from the brake rotors and pads by carefully applying the brakes several times.
– If the front spoiler is damaged or you install another spoiler, make sure the front wheel brakes are ventilated properly. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat, which reduces their effectiveness.
– Failure of a brake circuit impairs braking performance, which increases braking distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed it to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
– If the brake booster is not working, you will have to press much harder on the brake pedal to compensate for the lack of the booster.

Note

– Never let the brakes "rub" by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not really necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
– Before driving a long distance on a steep slope, decrease your speed and select a lower driving gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and relieves the brakes. If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

Tips

– If the brake booster is not working, you must press the brake pedal with much more force than normal.
– If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the front wheels is not interrupted. Otherwise the brake system can become too hot.

Electromechanical steering

The electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements.

Power steering adapts *electronically* based on the vehicle speed.

Indicator lights and messages

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

If this indicator light turns on and stays on and this message appears, the power steering may have failed.

Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do **not** continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! You may continue driving ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the indicator light turns on, the steering wheel may be more difficult to move or more sensitive than usual. The steering wheel may also be at an angle when driving straight.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

All wheel drive (quattro)

In all wheel drive, all four wheels are powered.

General information

In all wheel drive, the driving power is divided between all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving behavior as well as the current road conditions. ⇨ *page 87, Electronic stabilization control (ESC)*.

The all wheel drive concept is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

Winter tires

By using all wheel drive, your vehicle has good *forward* motion with standard tires in winter conditions. However, in winter we recommend using winter or all season tires on *all four* wheels, because this will improve the *braking* effect.

Snow chains

If there are snow chain laws, snow chains must also be used on vehicles with all wheel drive ⇨ *page 265, Snow chains*.

Replacing tires

For vehicles with all wheel drive, only wheels with the same rolling circumference should be used. Avoid wheels with different tread depths ⇨ *page 257, New tires or wheels*.

Offroad vehicle?

Your Audi is not an offroad vehicle - there is not enough ground clearance. For this reason, avoid difficult terrain.

WARNING

- Also, in vehicles with all wheel drive, adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not be tempted to accelerate to a high speed when the road is slippery this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can "hydroplane" if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine does not rev higher suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. For this reason, pay attention to the road conditions regardless of your speed.

Rear spoiler

The extendable rear spoiler increases driving stability.



Fig. 89 Center console: button for the rear spoiler

The rear spoiler retracts and extends. It can be activated in various operating modes (manual mode or automatic mode). ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic mode (normal operation)

– Automatic extension: the rear spoiler will automatically extend when speeds exceed approximately 75 mph (120 km/h)
– Automatic retraction: the rear spoiler will automatically retract when speeds decrease to under approximately 50 mph (80 km/h).

Manual mode

– Extending manually: briefly tap the ⇨ *fig. 89* button to fully extend the rear spoiler.
– Retracting manually: when driving at speeds below approximately 10 mph (20 km/h), press and hold the button to retract the rear spoiler. When at speeds between 10 mph (20 km/h) and 75 mph (120 km/h), the rear spoiler will completely retract when you tap the button.

Indicator lights

/ Rear spoiler: malfunction!

The rear spoiler may not have extended due to a malfunction. This could change the vehicle's driving characteristics at high speeds. Do not drive faster than 85 mph (140 km/h). Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. The color of the indicator light depends on the vehicle speed.

WARNING

Driving at higher speeds without the rear spoiler deployed can impair handling characteristics, making the vehicle harder to control.
– Always make sure that the spoiler is deployed when driving at speeds over 85 mph (140 km/h). If the rear spoiler warning/indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on, the rear spoiler may not have deployed.
– Never drive at speeds higher than 85 mph (140 km/h) if the spoiler is not deployed. Have the spoiler inspected as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
– Always obey speed limits and other traffic laws.

WARNING

Improper operation of the rear spoiler can cause crushing injuries.
– Always make sure that nobody, especially children, is in the way when the rear spoiler is deployed or retracted.

Note

– Never push on the vehicle on the rear spoiler. This could cause damage.
– To prevent damage to the rear spoiler do not lean or place anything on it.
– Only operate the rear spoiler manually when the luggage compartment lid is close and the rear spoiler moving parts are not blocked. Otherwise, damage could occur.

Tips

Clean the rear spoiler compartment every 2 to 3 months. To function correctly, the rear spoiler must be free of ice, snow and leaves.

Energy management

The starting ability is optimized

The energy management system manages the electrical energy distribution and optimizes the availability of electrical energy for starting the engine.

When a vehicle with a conventional energy system is not driven for a long time, the battery is drained by equipment (for example the immobilizer). In certain circumstances, there could may not be enough energy to start the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the battery life.

The energy management system Is made up of **battery diagnosis**, **idling current management** and **dynamic energy management**.

Battery diagnosis

The battery diagnosis determines the battery charge level. The sensors determine the battery ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

voltage, the battery current, and the battery temperature. The current charge level and the performance of the battery are determined based on this.

Idling current management

The idling current management decreases the energy used while parked. With the engine switched off, it manages the energy distribution to the different electrical components. Date from battery diagnosis is taken into account for this.

Depending on the battery charge level, electrical equipment is switched off one item after the other, to prevent the battery from draining and to retain the starting ability.

Dynamic energy management

While driving, dynamic energy management distributes the appropriate amount of energy to the electrical equipment. It controls the battery charge level so that more energy is not used then is being generated in order to maintain an optimal battery charge level.

Tips

- Energy management cannot overcome the laws of physics. Note that the charge level and length of the battery life are limited.
- When the starting ability is jeopardized, the indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 13*.

What you should know

Maintaining the starting ability is the highest priority.

A lot of stress is placed on the battery when driving short distances, in traffic, and at cold times of the year. A lot of energy is used but little is generated. It is also critical when the engine is not running but electrical equipment is switched on. In this case, energy is used but none is generated.

In situations like this, energy management will actively regulated the distribution of energy.

Long periods without use

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical consumers are gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time. Some convenience functions such as opening with the remote control key may not be available. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

With the engine switched off

The battery will drain if you use Infotainment functions such as listening to the radio while the engine is switched off.

The vehicle's ability to start may be impaired by the energy use, a message will appear in the Infotainment system display. The message indicates that the system will switch off automatically soon. If you would like to continue using the functions, you must start the engine.

With the engine running

Although electrical energy is generated while driving, the battery can drain. This can happen when little energy is generated, and much is used and the charge level of the battery is not optimal.

To restore the balance of energy, components that require large amounts of energy are temporarily scaled back or switched off. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the seat heating* or rear window defroster is not working, then it has been temporarily reduced or switched off. These systems are available again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.

In addition, you may notice that the idle speed has slightly increased. That is normal and no cause for concern. Due to the increased idling speed, the additional required energy will be generated and the battery will be charged.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Information about data recorded by vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is not equipped with a crash data recorder. This device is installed by some vehicle manufacturers to record data about crashes so that it can be analyzed later. Crash data recorders are also called “Event Data Recorders (EDR)”.

In some legal jurisdictions, it is not permitted to access or download data recorded by pre-installed crash data recorders in order to evaluate a crash without clear consent of the vehicle owner.

Your vehicle is not equipped with a crash data recorder. However it does contain a variety of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as engine function, exhaust treatment or airbags and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record vehicle data during normal driving for diagnosis and repair purposes. The recording capability of the electronic control modules is limited to data only - no sound is recorded. If the control module detects a system malfunction or other change in status, a very limited amount of data is recorded for an extremely small period of time. Data that is recorded in such a case may include vehicle speed, driving direction, the load on the brakes and head restraints and performance in the event of an accident or other change in status. The stored data can only be read or downloaded with special devices.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi Media Interface

Traffic safety information

Audi recommends only performing certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a destination, when the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

WARNING

Only use the Infotainment system when traffic conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.

Introduction

The Multi Media Interface, or MMI for short, combines various systems for communication, navigation and entertainment in your Audi. You can operate the MMI using the MMI control panel, the multifunction steering wheel or the voice recognition system*.*



Fig. 90 Control panel with On/Off knob

Switching the MMI on/off

The MMI can be manually switched on and off.

– **Switching on manually**: press the On/Off knob ② briefly ⇨ *page 95, fig. 90*. **Or**: press the MENU button ④ or one of the buttons to directly open the menus ①.

When the system is switched on, the last menu that was selected is displayed and the last audio source that was selected begins playing.

– **Switching off manually**: press and hold the On/Off knob ② until the MMI switches off. If the MMI has been switched off manually, it does *not* switch on again automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

Additional On/Off knob functions:

– **Adjusting the volume**: turn the On/Off knob ② ⇨ *page 95, fig. 90*.
– **Muting (mute)**: briefly press the On/Off knob.
– **Selecting the previous/next function (for example, a radio station/track)**: briefly press the On/Off knob toward the left ⏮ or right ⏭.
– **Fast forwarding/rewinding (for example, tracks)**: press the On/Off knob longer toward the right ⏭ or left ⏮.

WARNING

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

The MMI switches off automatically if the engine is not running and the battery is low.

Operating the MMI

Opening a menu



Fig. 91 Main menu

Opening the main menu

▸ Press the MENU button ④ ⇨ *page 95, fig. 90*. The MMI menus (such as **Radio**) are displayed ⇨ *fig. 91*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Opening a menu directly

- Press the applicable button ① ⇨ *page 95, fig. 90* in the direction of the desired menu (such as RADIO).

Selecting and confirming a function

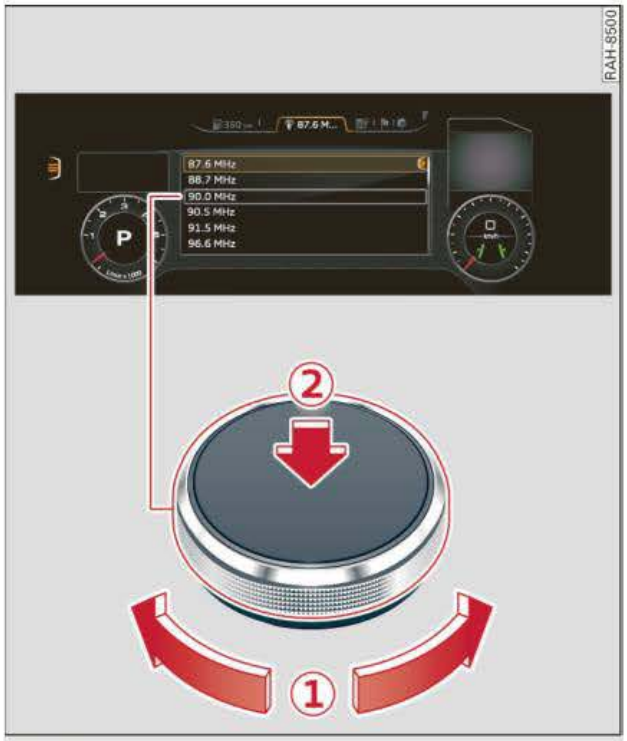


Fig. 92 Operating

Selecting and confirming a function in a menu/list

- ① **Selecting the function**: turn the control knob to the desired function (such as selecting a frequency).
- ② **Confirming the selection**: press the control knob.

Returning to functions at higher levels

- Press the BACK button ③ ⇨ *page 95, fig. 90.*

Opening/closing the selection menu

Through the selection menu, you can open additional functions within a menu item (such as Radio).



Fig. 93 Central area with selection menu symbol

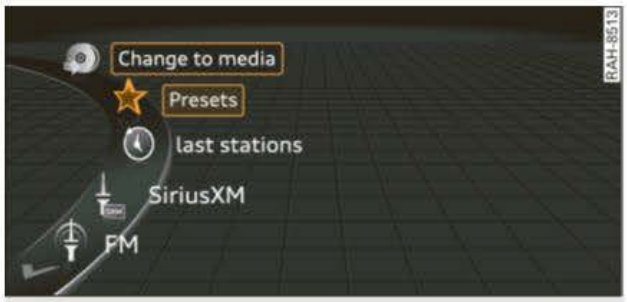


Fig. 94 Opened selection menu

Requirement: the selection menu symbol must be displayed on the left side of the Infotainment system ⇨ *fig. 93*.

Opening the selection menu

- Press the left control button ⇨ *fig. 93*.

Closing the selection menu

- Press the right control button ⇨ *page 97, fig. 95* to return to the function one level up.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Opening/closing the options menu

Using the options menu, you can select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item (such as Radio).

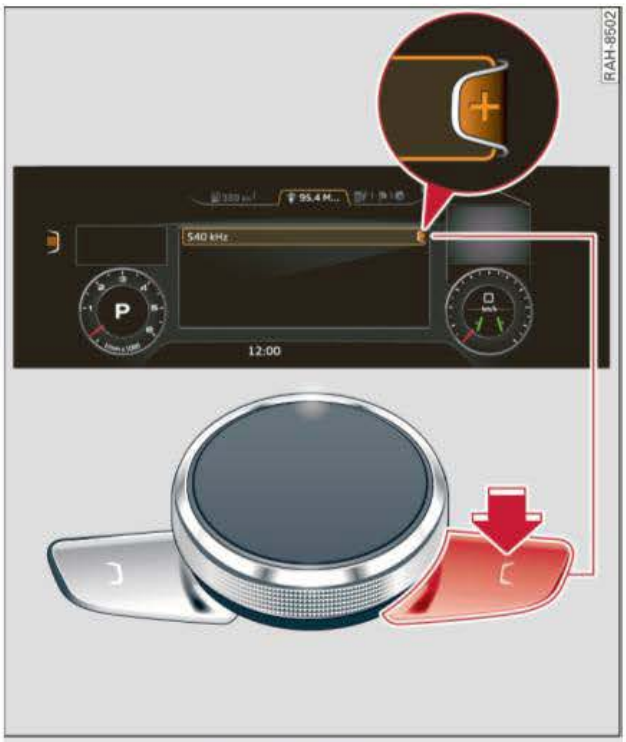


Fig. 95 Central area with options menu symbol



Fig. 96 Opened options menu

Requirement: the options menu symbol [+] must be displayed on the right side of the Infotainment system ⇨ *fig. 95*.

Opening the options menu

▸ Press the right control button ⇨ *fig. 95*.

Closing the options menu

▸ Press the left control button ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93* to return to the function one level up.

Information on paths

This guide shows you at a glance the paths for opening a desired menu and its settings and functions.

Example of a path

▸ Select: [RADIO] button > left control knob > **FM**.

Following the path

▸ Press the [RADIO] button.
▸ Press the left control button.
▸ Turn the control knob to the **FM** menu item to select it.
▸ Press the control knob to confirm the selected **FM** menu item.
▸ The selected and confirmed function is executed. In this example, the **FM** frequency band is set.

MMI touch

The MMI touch control pad is on the surface with the control knob.



Fig. 97 Display when MMI touch is active

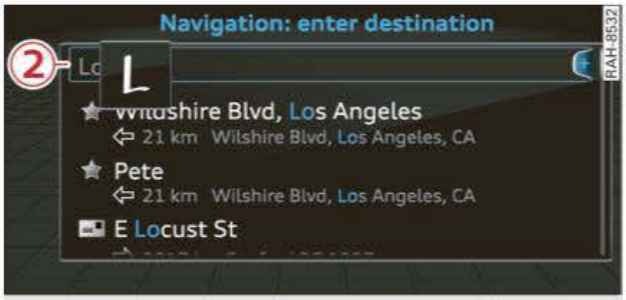


Fig. 98 Entering a navigation destination

If an operation is possible using the MMI touch control pad, the symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 97* will appear in the Infotainment system display. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Entering numbers, letters, and symbols

Requirement: it must be possible to enter text or numbers.

- Write an individual letter (also: upper case/lower case) or numbers/characters on the MMI touch control pad using your finger. A character recognized by the system will appear in the Infotainment system display (2) ⇨ *fig. 97* and it will confirm with an audio signal, if necessary, and transfer the character to the input field.
- **Entering spaces**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from left to right.
- **Deleting characters**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from right to left.
- **Selecting the input suggestion**: press the control knob.
- **Switching directly to the results list**: turn the control knob to the right
- **Entering Cyrillic characters**: press the right control button. Select and confirm **Change to Cyrillic character set**.

Moving the crosshairs/map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 139, fig. 120*.

- **Showing/hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs. Press the BACK button (3) ⇨ *page 95, fig. 90* to hide the crosshairs again.
- **Moving the crosshairs in a standard map**: move the crosshairs shown in the desired direction using your finger on the MMI touch control pad.
- **Moving the standard map/online map**: move the crosshairs shown in the desired direction using two fingers on the MMI touch control pad ⇨ *page 143*.
- **Moving the map quickly**: pull two of your fingers in the desired direction quickly along the MMI touch control pad. The map will come to a stop after several seconds.

Zooming in/out on the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 139, fig. 120*.

- **Zooming in on the map**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs. Touch the MMI touch control pad with two fingers and pull your fingers away from each other.
- **Zooming out on the map**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs. Touch the MMI touch control pad with two fingers and pull your fingers together.

Adjusting the sound focus

Requirement: the **Balance/Fader** function must be selected ⇨ *page 169*.

- **Moving the crosshairs for sound focus**: move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch control pad.

Using the DVD main menu

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 159*.

- **Selecting a menu item**: move your finger up/down or left/right on the MMI touch control pad.
- **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob.

Tips

The volume of the voice guidance prompts for the MMI touch can be adjusted separately ⇨ *page 170*.

Control knob with joystick function

The MMI control panel has a control knob with joystick function, which can be used to move the crosshairs on a map or adjust the sound focus.

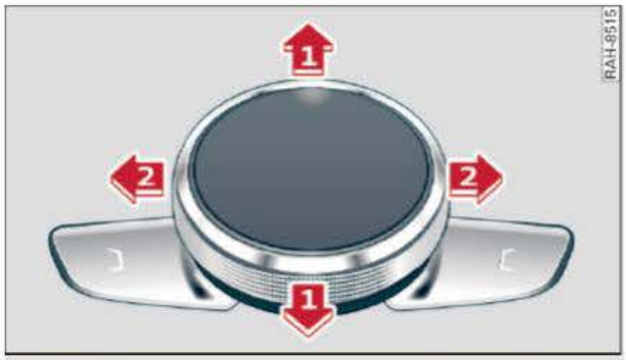


Fig. 99 Operating concept for the control knob with joystick function

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Opening/closing a selection menu

Push the control knob toward the left to open the selection menu ⇨ *page 96*.

Press the BACK button ③ ⇨ *page 95, fig. 90* to return to the function one level up. **Or**: push the control knob to the right to close the selection menu.

Opening/closing the options menu

Push the control knob to the right to open the options menu ⇨ *page 97*.

Press the BACK button ③ ⇨ *page 95, fig. 90* to return to the function one level up. **Or**: push the control knob to the left to close the options menu.

Displaying the input field*

Push the control knob up to reach the beginning of a list in the central area/input field.

Switching to speller input*

When the input field is already open, switch directly to the speller in the input field by pushing the control knob up again ⇨ *page 99*.

On the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 139, fig. 120*.

– **Displaying the input field**: push the control knob up
– **Displaying route guidance**: when route guidance is active, you can also display the route guidance by pushing the control knob up ⇨ *page 132*.
– **Zooming in/out on the map (zoom)**: turn the control knob to the right/left to zoom in/out on the map.

Adjusting the sound focus*

Requirement: the balance/fader function must be selected ⇨ *page 169*.

– **Moving the sound focus crosshairs**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs. The crosshairs can now be moved horizontally. Press the control knob again to move the crosshairs vertically.

Using the DVD main menu

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 159*.

– **Selecting a menu item**: move the control knob with joystick function up or down or to the left or right.
– **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob.

Letter and number speller



Fig. 100 Speller

– **Entering characters**: turn the control knob to the desired character using the character selection ⑪ ⇨ *fig. 100*. Press the control knob to confirm the character. Your input is displayed ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

in the input field ②. When you have entered all of the characters, select and confirm LIST ①. **Or**: push the control knob down.

– **Deleting characters**: turn the speller to ⌫ ⑩ and press and hold the control knob down. **Or**: press the right control button and select and confirm **Clear input field**.

– **Entering special characters**: select and confirm !&? ⑥, äöü ⑦ or 123 ⑧. Select and confirm the desired special character (for example, a hyphen or period) with the number speller.

– **Input assistance**: in some cases such as in navigation, an input is suggested based on logical deduction of possibilities to complete your input. You can select this suggestion by pushing the control knob up.

– **Results list**: in some cases, such as in the directory, the system switches automatically to the results list based on logical deduction ③. Select and confirm a suggestion from the list.

Overview of symbols in the speller

The symbols in the letter/number speller are explained in the following table:

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	LIST	Switch to the results list.
②	Input field	The current input is displayed.
③	Results list	A list with suggestions based on the letters already entered is displayed.
④	⬆	Switches from lower case to upper case letters or from upper case to lower case letters.
⑤	⊂+	Open additional speller options, such as **Close speller**, **Clear input field** or **Change to Cyrillic character set**
⑥	!&?	Character sets and special characters are displayed.
⑦	äöü	Language-specific special characters are displayed.
⑧	123/ABC	Switches from letter to number input or from number to letter input.
⑨	⎵	A space is added in the input field.
⑩	⌫	The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.
⑪	Character selection	The selected character is highlighted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Menus and symbols

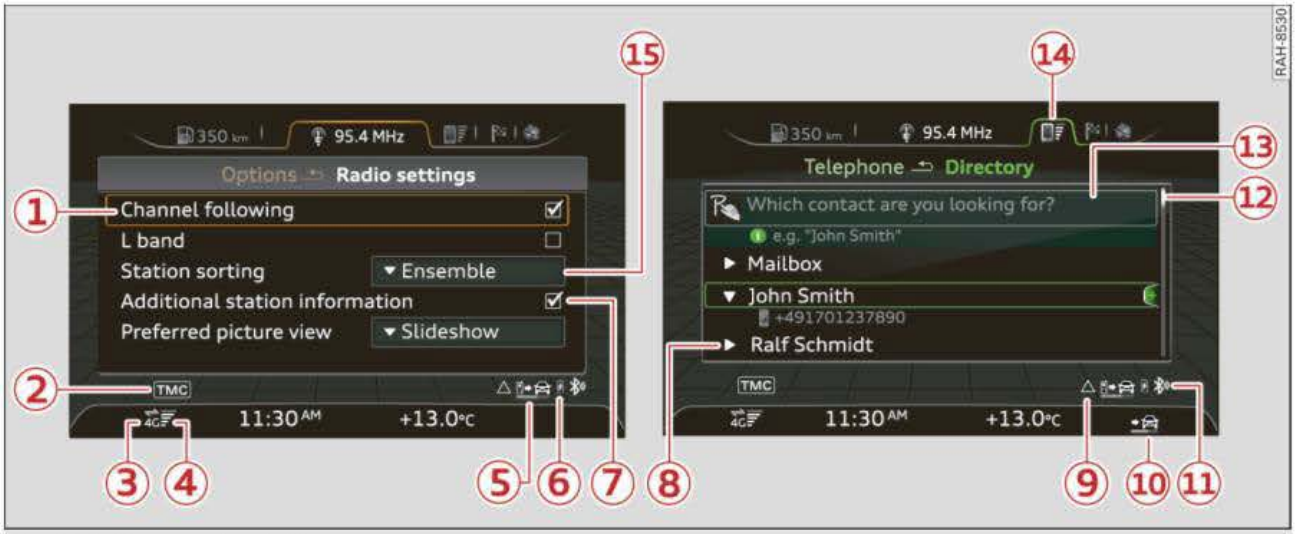


Fig. 101 Menus and symbols

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	Selected text	Selected function
②	TMC	TMC/online traffic information reception ⇨ *page 142*
③	2G/3G/LTE*	Network coverage for the active data connection ⇨ *page 127* **2G**: GSM network **3G**: UMTS network **LTE**: LTE network When a data connection is established, the symbol for an active data connection appears in the status line on the Infotainment system display ⇨ *page 127*
④	Data connection signal strength bars*	Signal strength for the active data connection, or **PIN**: enter the PIN (SIM) **PUK**: enter the PUK **SIM**: insert the SIM card ⇨ *page 121*
⑤	Importing process	Import/update the contacts in the directory or the call lists
⑥	Battery	Battery charge level for the connected cell phone
⑦	Check boxes ☑	Activate and deactivate specific functions by pressing the control knob
⑧	Arrow	Access information by pressing the control knob
⑨	Roaming	Leave the mobile network for the connected cell phone or the inserted SIM card
⑩	Importing process	Importing audio/video files to the Jukebox ⇨ *page 151*
⑪	Bluetooth*	Bluetooth device connected ⇨ *page 152* or ⇨ *page 110*
⑫	Scroll bars	Display of longer lists Additional functions for selection
⑬	Input field	Information that can be changed using the letter/number speller ⇨ *page 99*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
⑭	Cell phone signal strength bars*	Cell phone network signal strength for a connected cell phone ⇨ *page 110*
⑮	Selection list	Settings for the selected function that are accessed by pressing the control knob

Free text search

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field.



Fig. 102 Input suggestion

The free text search is available in the **Vehicle**, **Media**, **Telephone**, **Navigation** and **Audi connect*** menus.

Opening free text search

- Select: MENU button > *desired menu item* (such as Telephone).
- If necessary, push the control knob up to open the input field ① ⇨ *fig. 102*.

Free text search for an entry

- Enter one or more search terms in any order into the input field at the same time. The individual search terms must be separated by spaces when entering.

Depending on the input, an input suggestion ③ is displayed. Additional entries that contain the entered search term are listed In the results list ②.

If the desired term is still not displayed, enter additional letters until it is displayed.

It is often enough just to enter the first letters of the search term in order for it to display in the results list. Write, for example in the **Telephone** menu, the initials of the contact being searched separated by a space.

Selecting the input suggestion

Requirement: an input suggestion must be displayed.

- **MMI touch input***: press the control knob.
- **Speller input**: push the control knob up.

Selecting an entry from the results list

- **MMI touch input***: turn the control knob downward. Select and confirm an entry from the list.
- **Speller input**: select and confirm LIST. **Or**: push the control knob down. Select and confirm an entry from the list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GLOBAL COMMANDS

- Telephone
- Audi connect
- Navigation
- Directory
- Radio
- Media
- Sound
- Help
- Help Speech dialog system
- Help Telephone
- Help Audi connect
- Help Navigation
- Help Map
- Help Radio
- Help Media
- Favorites
- Call (XY)
- Enter number
- Redial
- Read new text message
- Navigate to (XY)
- Enter address/destination
- Online destinations
- Cancel route guidance
- Map
- Line (XY)
- Next page / previous page
- Cancel
- No, I meant (XY)
- Correction

TELEPHONE

- Enter number
  - Delete number / correction
- Directory
- Call (XY)
  - business / private / land line / mobile
- Call list
- Redial
- Call mailbox
- Enter PIN / delete PIN
- Telephone favorites

NAVIGATION

- Navigate to (XY)
  - Business address / Private address
- Start / cancel route guidance
- Directory
- Last destinations
- Navigation favorites
- Drive home
- Enter address
- Enter country / town / street / state
- Exclude route / Exclude route for (XY) km / m
- Exclude next route section / Exclude next street
- Route list
- Calculate alternative routes
- Online destinations
- Special destination

MAP

- Map
- Day map / Night map
- 2D driving position map / 2D north position map / 3D map / Destination map / Overview map

AUDI CONNECT

- Audi connect
- Travel information / Parking information
- Fuel prices
- Weather
- Flight information / Train information
- City events
- Online news
- Facebook / Twitter

RADIO

- Radio presets
- Last stations
- FM
- FM / AM / SIRIUS XM
- Station (XY) / Frequency (XY)
- Traffic announcement on / off

MEDIA

- Jukebox
- CD / DVD
- SD card 1 / SD card 2
- Audi music interface / iPod / USB / Bluetooth / Wi-Fi / Medium (XY)
- Media favorites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos
- Folder up
- Random playback on / off

RAH-8462

Fig. 103 Command overview

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Voice recognition system

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can operate many Infotainment functions conveniently by speaking.



Fig. 104 Talk button and right thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 95*, there must be no phone call in progress and the parking system must not be active.

- **Switching on**: briefly press the ⇨ *fig. 104* button on the multifunction steering wheel* and say the desired command after the **Beep**.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.
- **Pause**: say the command **Pause**. To resume, press the button.
- **Correcting**: press the button one time. **Or**: say the command **Correct**.

Input assistance

The system guides you through the input with visual and audio feedback.

– **Visual input assistance**: after switching on voice recognition, a display with a selection of possible commands appears. The command display can be switched on/off under MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialog system**.
– **Audio input assistance**: to have the possible commands read, turn the voice recognition system on and say **Help**.

For the system to understand you:

Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.

Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.

Do not speak a command when the voice recognition system is making an announcement.

Close the doors, the windows and the sunroof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.

Only use the system from the driver's seat because the hands free microphone is directed toward that seat.

Additional settings

Additional settings such as **individual speech training** to your voice, **Command display** or **volume of spoken prompts** can be adjusted under MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialog system**.

WARNING

– Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
– Do not use the voice recognition system in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

– The dialog pauses when there is an incoming phone call and will continue if you ignore the call. The dialog ends if you answer the call.
– Navigation messages and traffic announcements* are not made during a dialog.
– You can select an item in the list using either the voice recognition system or the control knob.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Command overview information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

The following overviews describe the commands that can be used to operate the MMI using the voice recognition system.

Alternative commands are separated using a "/", for example say: **Telephone** / (or) **Navigation** / (or) **Radio**.

Sequences of commands used to perform an action are identified with a ">", for example say: **Enter address** > (then) **Enter country/state**.

The majority shown are main commands. This system also recognizes synonyms in certain cases. For example, for **business address**, you can also say **business**, **work**, **office** or **job**.

Commands

Global commands

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can always use the global commands, regardless of the menu selected.

Function	Say:
Opening a menu	**Telephone** / **Directory** / **Navigation** / **Radio** / **Media** / **Audi connect*** / **Car** / **Tone**
Having the possible commands read aloud	**Help** / **Help speech dialog system** / **Help Telephone** / **Help Navigation** / **Help Map** / **Help Radio** / **Help Media** / **Help Audi connect***
Telephone functions	**Call (XY)**, for example **Call "John Smith"** / **Enter number** / **Redial** / **Directory** / **Read text message**
	Call (XY), for example **Call "John Smith"** / **Enter number** / **Redial** / **Directory**
Navigation functions	**Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Navigate to "John Smith"** / **Enter address** / **Cancel route guidance** / **Map** / **Online destinations*** / **Online destination (XY)***
Accessing favorites	**Favorites** > *follow the system prompts*
Selecting an entry from a list	**Line (XY)**
Scrolling through a list	**Next page** / **Previous page**
Correct the command given	**Correct**
Switching the voice recognition system off	**Cancel**

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 110* and the **Telephone** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 105*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Function	Say:
Calling a contact from the directory	**Call (XY)**, for example **Call "John Smith"**
Selecting a specific contact number	**Call (XY) at work** / **Private** / **Landline** / **Cell phone**, for example, **Call "John Smith" private**
Selecting a phone number with an address card open	**Call** / **Call work** / **Call private** / **Call landline** / **Call cell phone work**
Calling a contact from your favorites list	**Telephone favorites** > *After being prompted, say the desired contact* > **Dial**
Displaying recent calls	**Call list**
Calling the last number dialed	**Redialing**
Dialing a phone number	**Enter number** > *After being prompted, say the telephone number in groups of individual numbers*, for example. **888 555 1212** > **Dial**
Correcting the phone number that was entered	**Correct** / **Delete number**
Showing contact information	**Directory** > *After being prompted, say the desired contact*, such as **John Smith**
Listening to messages	**Call voicemail**
Entering the PIN (SIM)	**Enter PIN** > *when prompted, say the PIN in individual numbers* > **Save**
Correcting the PIN entry	**Correct** / **Delete PIN**
Correct data input	**No, I meant (XY)**
Close the entire command list	**Closing**

Tips

– Contacts in the directory can selected using the full name ("first name last name" and "last name, first name") as well as with only the first or last name. This applies to cell phones that transmit names separated into first and last names.

– For more information on the supported cell phones, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or your authorized Audi dealer.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and Audi connect

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 121*.

Function	Say:
Accessing Audi connect services	**Audi connect**. Follow the system prompts.

Tips

Refer to the notes in the **About Audi connect** chapter ⇨ *page 128*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and navigation system

Requirement: the **Navigation** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 105*.

You can say the following commands to enter a destination:

Function	Say:
Opening the list of previous navigation destinations	**Last destinations**
Accessing favorites	**Navigation favorites**
Selecting the home address	**Home address** or **Drive home**
Entering an address with guidance from the system	**Enter address** > *follow the system prompts*
Individual commands for entering a destination	**Enter country** / **Enter state** / **Enter city** / **Enter ZIP code** / **Enter street** / **Enter house number**
Making a correction while entering a destination	**Correct**
Navigating to a contact	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Drive me to "John Smith"**
Navigating to a specific address for a contact	**Navigate to (XY) business** / **private**, for example, "Navigate to John Smith"
Navigating to favorites	**Navigation favorites** > **Line (XY)** / *Line contents* > *Start route guidance when prompted*
Starting route guidance with an address card open	**Navigate** / **Navigate to private address** / **Navigate to business address**
Enter a new destination/stopover when route guidance is active	**Enter destination** > *enter the desired address when prompted* > *confirm the new destination/stopover if prompted*
Starting route guidance after entering a destination	**Start route guidance**
Canceling current route guidance	**Cancel route guidance**
Calculating alternative routes	**Calculate alternative routes**
Entering a point of interest by selecting a search area with guidance from the system	**Point of interest** > **Change search area** > *category or subcategory when prompted*, for example "restaurant"
Destination input categories	**Audi Service** / **Train station** / **Airport** / **Hotel** / **Hospital** / **Parking facility** / **Rest area** / **Restaurant** / **Gas station** *etc.*
Search areas for entering points of interest	**Immediate vicinity** / **Along the route** / **Vicinity of destination** / **Vicinity of stopover** / **In new city** / **In new state or country**
Entering an online destination*	**Online destination (XY)**, for example "**Online destination "Lakeview Hotel"**"
Correct data input	**No, I meant (XY)**
Close the entire command list	**Close**

You can say the following commands for more settings in Navigation: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Function	Say:
General map options	**Map / Day map / Night map / Automatically change map color**
Map type	**2D driving position map / 2D north position map / 3D map / Destination map / Overview map / Standard map* / Traffic map* / Google Earth map***
Showing the route list	**Route list**
Showing the remaining distance/ time when route guidance is active	**Destination information**
Speed limit prompt	**How fast can I drive here?**
Setting voice guidance for active route guidance	
Auto rerouting (traffic)	**Manual rerouting / Auto rerouting / Rerouting off**
Blocking a certain section on the route	**Block route (XY) meters/kilometers/yards/miles / Block next route / Block next section of route**

Tips

– Destinations may have to be spelled when entered, depending on the country where you are located and which menu language you have selected.

– Refer to the notes in the **About Audi connect** chapter ⇨ *page 128*.

Radio

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: the **Radio** must be open already regardless of what menu you are currently in.

Function	Say:
Selecting the reception band	**FM / SiriusXM* / AM**
Selecting a station from the station list	**Channel (XY) / Frequency (XY) / Last stations**
Selecting a station from favorites/ presets	**Radio presets > Line (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY) / Frequency (XY) HD 1**
Correct data input	**No, I meant (XY)**
Close the entire command list	**Closing**

Media

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: a media source must be open already regardless of what menu you are currently in. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Function	Say:
Selecting a source directly	**Jukebox* / CD / DVD / SD card 1 / SD card 2 / Audi music interface* / iPod* / USB* / Bluetooth* / Wi-Fi* / Medium (XY)**, for example "John's player"
Selecting audio /video files* from the Jukebox*	**Media favorites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos**
Selecting audio files on an iPod (source: Audi music interface*)	**Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Composers / Podcasts / Audio books**
Navigating within a folder structure/list	**Directory up / Line (XY)**
Selecting shuffle	**Shuffle on / Shuffle off**
Correct data input	**No, I meant (XY)**
Close the entire command list	**Closing**

External voice operation

Requirement:

The ignition and the MMI muse be switched on, there must be no active phone calls and the parking system and Audi speech dialog system must not be active.

A cell phone must be connected to the MMI through the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 110*.

The cell phone being connected must have voice control that can be controlled externally.

- **Switching on**: hold down the button on the multifunction steering wheel* and say the desired command after the external speech dialog begins.
- **Resuming dialog**: if necessary, press the button and say a new command. **Or**: select and confirm **Resume speech dialog system** on the MMI control panel.
- **Restarting dialog**: the system remains ready to use for a short time after ending the dialog. You can start a new dialog during this time. Briefly press the button. **Or**: select and confirm **Restart speech dialog system** on the MMI control panel.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: select and confirm **Cancel** on the MMI control panel.

Tips

– Navigation messages and traffic announcements* are not made during a dialog.
– This function depends on the cell phone used. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide.
– AUDI AG simply provides access to control your cell phone with voice operation and does not take any responsibility for the contents and commands within the external voice control.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

To make calls through the MMI system, you must connect your phone to the MMI with Bluetooth. After connecting your phone to the MM with Bluetooth, you can use the telephone functions conveniently through the MMI.

Handsfree

After you have connected your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth, you can use the handsfree system and operate telephone functions through your MMI. Phone calls are transmitted through the antenna on your cell phone.

WARNING

- Medical experts warn that cell phones can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of 20 centimeters between the cell phone antenna and the pacemaker.
  - Do not carry the cell phone in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - Switch the cell phone off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Do not use the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 104* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
- Switch your cell phone off in areas where there is a risk of an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. This may include gas stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally turn your vehicle engine off.
- The demands of traffic require your full attention. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 95, Traffic safety information*.

Tips

The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle. It can also be affected by local conditions and interference with other devices.

- Check with your cell phone service provider or the database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth to learn which Bluetooth connections and functions are supported on your cell phone.

Connecting a telephone

Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

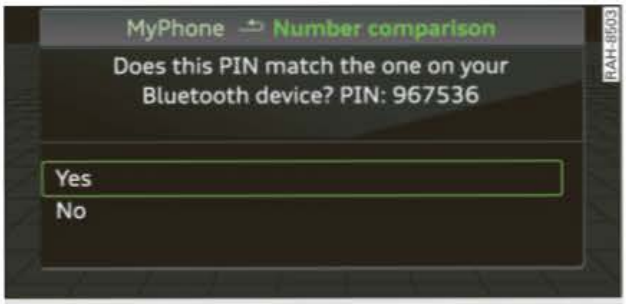


Fig. 105 Displaying the PIN for entering in the cell phone

Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 168* and cell phone must be switched on.

The cell phone to be connected must not be actively connected to any other Bluetooth device.

The MMI must not be connected to a cell phone.

Pairing a cell phone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > **Connect cell phone** > **Next**. The available Bluetooth devices are shown in the Infotainment system display. **Or**: search for the MMI in your cell phone through the Bluetooth device search. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Select and confirm the desired cell phone from the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.
- ▸ The MMI generates a PIN for the connection setup ⇨ *fig. 105*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ Enter the PIN for connecting on your cell phone. **Or**: when the PIN is displayed on your cell phone, confirm the PIN on your cell phone and in the MMI. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

Pay attention to any additional system prompts displayed on your cell phone, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the cell phone, you may have to confirm downloading the directory separately.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, a short message with information about the connected profiles will appear. You can also change the profile later by selecting MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 168*.

In addition, the cell phone contacts are automatically loaded in the MMI directory. This process can take several minutes, depending on the number of contacts.

Tips

- – Making phone calls through the MMI is only possible using a Bluetooth profile (**Hands-free**).
- – You can apply additional settings to connected cell phones using the connection manager ⇨ *page 167*.
- – You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when they are within range and the ignition is switched on.
- – Authorizing the MMI connection in your cell phone will make automatic connection possible.
- – Several cell phones can be paired to the MMI, but only one cell phone can be actively connected.
- – A Bluetooth device that is already paired with the MMI will be disconnected if another device is paired.
- – When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the cell phone will automatically disconnect.
- – You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide. For information on using the telephone, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or your authorized Audi dealer.

Using the Audi phone box

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

Using the Audi phone box, you can call using the external vehicle antenna and charge your cell phone using a USB adapter. Using the external antenna helps when there is low signal strength and also provides better reception quality.

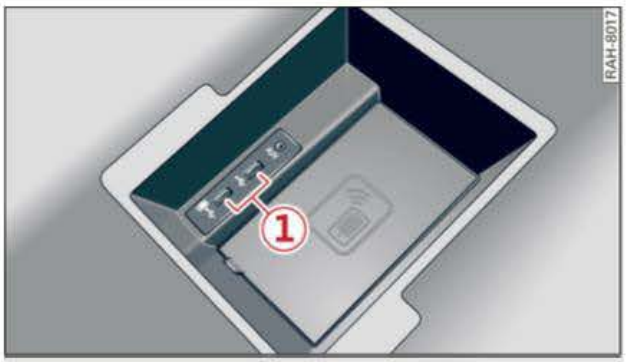


Fig. 106 Using the Audi phone box

The Audi phone box is located in the center console in the storage compartment (23) ⇨ *page 6, fig. 2*.

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected through Bluetooth ⇨ *page 110*.

- – **Connecting to the external vehicle antenna**: lay the cell phone on the center of the cell phone symbol in the Audi phone box with the display facing up. Make sure there are no objects between the Audi phone box and the cell phone.
- – **Charging a cell phone with a USB adapter**: connect your cell phone to the USB charging port (1) using a USB adapter cable ⇨ *fig. 106*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For ease of use, Audi offers a special USB adapter* ⇨ *page 155, fig. 132*. The following USB adapters are available at this time:

① USB adapter for cell phones with a micro USB connection*

② USB adapter for cell phones with an Apple Lightning connection*

③ USB adapter for cell phones with an Apple Dock connector*

WARNING

Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers. This can cause serious injuries and loss of control of the vehicle. Always keep the center armrest closed while driving.

Tips

- The Audi phone box is not available in all countries. Contact your authorized Audi dealer for additional information.
- If the cell phone is placed in a bag or protective sleeve inside the Audi phone box, this can interfere with the connection to the external antenna.
- Strong transmission quality cannot be guaranteed if more than one cell phone is inserted.
- Audi recommends using original Audi accessories. Audi has established their reliability, safety and suitability.
- You can purchase a USB adapter from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or at specialty stores.
- To prevent malfunctions, make sure the cell phone is positioned correctly in the Audi phone box.
- The Audi phone box is only available in the Canadian market.

Using the telephone

Accessing the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 107 Telephone functions in selection menu

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 110*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

The following functions are available ⇨ *fig. 107*:

① Recent calls ⇨ *page 113*
② Favorites ⇨ *page 114*
③ Directory ⇨ *page 117*
④ Enter number ⇨ *page 113*
⑤ Text message (cell phone)* ⇨ *page 114*

Dialing a phone number



Fig. 108 Dialing a phone number from the call list

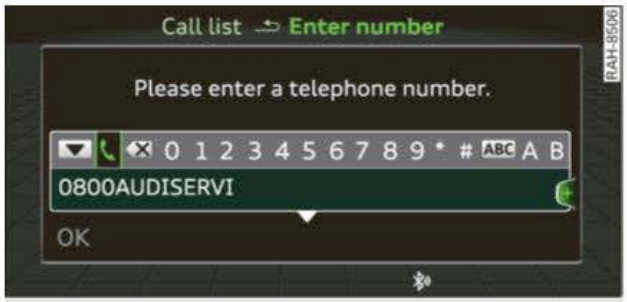


Fig. 109 Number speller

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Call list

Requirement: a phone number must be stored in the call list.

Select and confirm the desired telephone number from the recent calls list.

Call list symbols ⇨ *fig. 108*:

① Missed calls
② Dialed numbers
③ Accepted calls

Favorites

Requirement: a phone number or contact must be stored as a favorite ⇨ *page 114*.

Select and confirm a favorite in the favorites list.

Directory

Select and confirm a phone number from the directory ⇨ *page 117*.

Enter number

– **Entering a phone number as a sequence of numbers**: enter a phone number using the number speller ⇨ *fig. 109*.
– **Entering the phone number as a sequence of letters**: select and confirm ABC above the number speller. Enter a sequence of letters using the letter speller, for example *AUDISERVICE*.
– **Dialing a phone number**: select and confirm ✆. **Or**: push the control knob down. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **Deleting individual characters**: select and confirm ⌫.
– **Deleting all characters entered at once**: turn the speller to ⌫ and press and hold the control knob. **Or**: press the right control button. Select and confirm **Clear input field**.

Tone sequences (**DTMF**) can be entered directly into the speller during a phone call.

Accepting/ending a call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

– **Accepting a call**: select and confirm **Accept call**.
– **Ignoring a call**: select and confirm **Ignore call**.
– **Muting the active call**: select and confirm **Mute**.
– **Ending a call/canceling the dialing**: press the control knob (**End call**).

Answering an additional call: if there is an incoming call while another call is active, you can select **Accept call** to put the existing call on hold and answer the incoming call. If you select **Ignore call**, the incoming call will be ignored.

Caller information: the *name*, *phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the Infotainment system display depending on if the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted. A picture may also be displayed, depending on whether you have assigned a picture to a contact in your directory and if it was transferred to your MMI. You can find out if your cell phone supports this function from your cell phone network provider, your cell phone owner's manual or at www.audisua.com/bluetooth.

Tips

The radio or media playback is muted during a phone call.

During a phone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

▸ Press the right control button.

The following options are possible during a call depending on the cell phone being used and the type of connection:

– **Making an additional call**: select: **Find contact** > **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > *Entry in list*.
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select **Replace**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional functions include:

Mute: if you select and confirm this function, the other person on the phone cannot hear you. You can hear the other person.

Hold call/Resume: you can place the existing call on hold and resume it again. To resume the call, select and confirm the call you would like to resume.

Transfer call to cell phone*: select and confirm **Transfer call to cell phone** to transfer the existing call from the MMI to your cell phone.

Switch to hands-free mode*: select and confirm **Switch to hands-free mode** to transfer the call from your cell phone back to the MMI.

Toggle call: alternate between two phone calls while one of the calls is on hold. Selecting **End call** will end the active phone call. A phone call on hold can be resumed through the right control button > **Resume**.

Add to conference: a party on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the network) can be added to a conference call. To make an additional call, put all participants in the current conference call on hold using the right control button > **Hold conference**. Press the left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > *Entry in list*. You can add called contacts to the conference using the right control button > **Add to conference**. **Resume** takes all parties off hold.

3-way conferencing: select the right control button > **Telephone settings** > **Call options**. When the function is switched on ☑ you can accept an additional call using **Accept call** or ignore a call using **Ignore call**. When the function is switched off, you can **Replace** the call or **Ignore call**.

Connection manager: ⇨ *page 167*.

Telephone settings: ⇨ *page 119*.

Tips

– To be notified of an incoming call during a phone call, the *Call waiting* function in your cell phone must be switched on when using the hands-free profile (**Handsfree**).
– You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide.
– The display of an incoming phone call in the Infotainment display may still be visible for a few seconds depending on the cell phone in use. Using the **Replace** or **Ignore** functions may then end the active phone call.

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Up to 50 contacts, in addition to the voicemail number, can be stored in any order in the favorites list.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

– **Storing an existing phone number as a favorite**: select and confirm **Call list/Contacts**. Select and confirm a contact in the list. Select a phone number. Select the right control button > **Store as favorite**. Enter a name for the favorite or select a suggestion. Select and confirm with **Save**.
– **Renaming a stored favorite**: select and confirm **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*. Select the right control button > **Rename favorite**.
– **Moving a stored favorite**: select and confirm **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*. Select the right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.
– **Deleting a stored favorite**: select and confirm **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*. Select the right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite/Delete all favorites**.

Messages

Text message

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect and cell phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

Depending on the type of cell phone being used and the cell phone plan, you can receive and send text messages through the MMI.

Requirement ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A cell phone with an active Bluetooth MAP (Message Access Profile) must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 110*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Text message (cell phone)**.

Inbox

All received text messages are displayed.

Sent text messages

All sent text messages are displayed.

Outbox

All text messages to be sent are displayed.

Tips

– Please note that you may have to activate the receiving and sending of text messages depending on the SIM card being used (for example, when using a Multi-SIM). You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide.
– For more information on the supported cell phones, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or your authorized Audi dealer.

Writing a text message

Applies to: vehicles with automatic phone function or cell phones with a Bluetooth Message Access Profile

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Text message (cell phone)**> **Inbox** > right control button.

Writing a text message

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Enter a recipient. Select and confirm **Send**.

Replying*

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Select and confirm **Send**.

Message options

Applies to: vehicles with automatic phone function or cell phones with a Bluetooth Message Access Profile

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Text message (cell phone)**> **Inbox/Sent text messages/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available, depending on the selected menu.

Replying*

A reply can be sent for the selected message in the **Inbox**.

Forward

The selected text message can be forwarded to a different recipient.

Send again*

The selected text message can be resent.

Delete this text message*

The selected text message can be deleted.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 167, Connection manager*.

Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 119, Telephone settings*.

Tips

Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also deleted in the cell phone automatically.

E-mail*

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

Depending on the type of cell phone used, you can receive and send e-mails through the MMI.

Requirement: message access (MAP - Message Access Profile) must be activated in the Bluetooth settings on your cell phone. You can find out in your cell phone owner's manual if your cell phone supports this function.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **E-mail (cell phone)**. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Writing a new e-mail

– **Using a template**: select and confirm the desired template from the list.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

Inbox

All received e-mails are displayed.

Sent

All sent e-mails are displayed.

Outbox

All e-mails to be sent are displayed.

Drafts

All e-mails that have not yet been sent and saved e-mails are displayed.

Tips

– For more information on supported cell phones, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– To ensure that e-mails will be sent and received, connect your cell phone to the Wi-Fi Hotspot* in the vehicle so that the e-mail app on your cell phone maintains internet access. If you are not receiving e-mails despite having a successful connection, contact your e-mail service provider or your cell phone service provider.

Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **E-mail (cell phone)** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available, depending on the selected menu.

Store as template

Ten e-mail templates are stored in the MMI. You can save up to ten additional templates.

– Create an e-mail.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

Resume last edited e-mail

The last edited e-mail can be resumed.

Replying*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox**.

Reply to all*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox** and it will be sent to all of the entered recipients.

Forward

The selected e-mail can be forwarded to a different recipient.

Delete this message*

The selected e-mail can be deleted.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 167*.

Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 119*.

Tips

Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also automatically deleted in the connected cell phone.

Listening to voicemail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > **Voicemail**.

– **Entering the voicemail number**: enter the desired number. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **Dialing the voicemail number**: select and confirm **Voicemail**.

Tips

– This service must be set up and activated in advance in the cell phone network. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The voicemail number depends on the cell phone service provider.

Emergency call functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Enter number** > *Enter emergency call number (for example, 911)* > **OK**.

WARNING

– Because your phone works with radio signals, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely on only your phone when it comes to essential communication (such as a medical emergency).
– Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.

Tips

Emergency numbers are not the same everywhere. Find out which emergency number is used in your current location.

Directory

Opening the directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

After connecting the cell phone, the contacts in it are automatically imported into the MMI.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.

– **Selecting a contact**: select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for your selected contact open. Select and confirm a phone number to start a call.
– **Free text search for a contact**: refer to ⇨ *page 102*.

Contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and can be sorted by first or last name ⇨ *page 119*.

The directory can be opened through the **Telephone*** menu as well as through the **Navigation*** menu.

Tips

– Additional information on free text searching can be found under ⇨ *page 102*.
– Check for a possible request to synchronize on your cell phone. Requests to synchronize the directory must be confirmed so that your cell phone contacts can be loaded into the MMI.
– The contact display in the MMI depends on the cell phone used. For more information on the supported cell phones, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or your authorized Audi dealer.
– The directory from the cell phone with the active connection will always be displayed.
– The contacts from the cell phone may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.
– The public contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users.

Free text search for a contact

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
▸ To limit the search, enter the initials of the contact being searched with each initial separated by a space. Enter additional letters if necessary.
▸ Select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for your selected contact open.
▸ To make the call, select and confirm a phone number.

Tips

– You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly.
– Additional information on free text searching can be found under ⇨ *page 102*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Displaying contact details

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 110 Directory



Fig. 111 Showing contact details*

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Directory** > *a contact from the directory*.
- Select: right control button > **Show contact details**.

– **Calling**: select and confirm the desired telephone number.
– **Navigating**: to start navigation, select and confirm the desired address. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Press the right control button to open additional options for the contact details.

Read contact aloud

The MMI automatically creates a name tag for each entry in the directory that can be read by the MMI.

Store as favorite

See ⇨ *page 114, Favorites*.

Send text message*

You can send a text message ⇨ *page 115* to the selected contact.

Delete contact

The selected contact can be deleted.

Tips

– Contacts edited in the MMI directory cannot be automatically updated in the connected cell phone. Audi recommends editing cell phone contacts directly in the cell phone.
– Only the contacts in the MMI memory (private/public) can be edited or deleted.

Importing/exporting contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Contacts in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported into the directory or exported.

Requirement: an SD card must be inserted in one of the SD card readers ⇨ *page 150* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 155* or the requirements for Audi connect services* must be met ⇨ *page 121*.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- Select: right control button > **Directory settings**.

– **Importing contacts from a storage device**: select and confirm **Import contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start import**.
– **Exporting contacts to a storage device**: select and confirm **Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start export**.
– **Selecting all contacts at once to import/export**: select and confirm **Import contacts/Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > **All** > **Start import/Start export**. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **Importing contacts from your myAudi account**[1]: select and confirm **Import contacts** > **myAudi account** Enter your myAudi user data.

You must have a **myAudi account** in order to import contacts from the account. Entering your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN is only required one time. You will receive the myAudi PIN in your myAudi account once you have registered a vehicle in the account.

Tips

– Read and follow to the notes about **Audi connect** ⇨ *page 128*.
– For additional information on the myAudi account, visit http://my.audiusa.com.
– The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the directory.
– A maximum of 1000 contacts can be imported. You can check the memory capacity for the directory at any time ⇨ *page 119*.
– Never save important data on memory cards or USB storage devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.
– Contacts that were downloaded from a cell phone cannot be exported.

Additional settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Telephone settings**.

Call options*

3-way conferencing: can be switched **on**/**off**.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 168, Bluetooth settings*.

Ringtone and volume settings[2]

Using the **Mute telephone** function, you can switch the ringtone on your MMI on or off. The ringtones are played using the **Ringtone** function. Press the control knob to save the selected ringtone. The **Microphone sensitivity** can be adjusted during a phone call using the control knob. For the **Ringtone volume**/**Message volume** settings, refer to ⇨ *page 169*.

Tips

– Several cell phones can be paired to the MMI, but only one cell phone can be actively connected.
– To delete all paired Bluetooth devices, the **Bluetooth** function can be reset to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 166*.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
▸ Select: right control button > **Directory settings**.

Memory capacity

Shows the **Memory capacity** for the directory.

You can manage up to 17,000 contacts with the directory. You can load up to 4,000 contacts from your cell phone into each directory. You can also import up to 1,000 contacts from a storage device.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in your directory alphabetically according to **Last name** or **First name**.

Import contacts

See ⇨ *page 118, Importing/exporting contacts*.

Export contacts

See ⇨ *page 118, Importing/exporting contacts*. ▶

[1] The requirements for using Audi connect services* must be met and you must have a myAudi account set up at http://my.audiusa.com. You must have a vehicle stored in your myAudi account and you must have contacts stored.
[2] Depends on the connected cell phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Refresh directory

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can manually download your cell phone contacts. Depending on the cell phone, the Bluetooth connection may need to be disconnected and reconnected to update the contacts.

Hide contacts without phone number

When this function is switched on ☑, contacts that do not have any numbers assigned to them will be grayed out in the directory.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Problem	Solution
Connecting the cell phone to the MMI failed.	Check if the requirements for connecting a cell phone have been met ⇨ *page 110*. **Or:** check if you accidentally declined the connection setup PIN on your cell phone.
After pairing, **not all contacts/no contacts** are loaded in the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your cell phone.
Certain **telephone functions** are grayed out or not available.	The telephone functions depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider, in your cell phone user guide or in the database for mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.
Some **telephone functions** are switched off or not available, even though the cell phone is supported.	On corporate phones, some Bluetooth settings may not be compatible or the cell phone Bluetooth function may be deactivated. You can obtain more information from your system administrator.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audi connect

Introduction

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

With Audi connect services, online information is transmitted and integrated directly in the vehicle.

A mobile end device can be used to access the Internet through a Wi-Fi hotspot, either when the vehicle is stationary or from the rear seat when the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services when road and traffic conditions permit. Always read and follow the notes in ⇨ *page 95, Traffic safety information*.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, use the Audi connect services with a Wi-Fi hotspot only in the rear seat when the vehicle is in motion or only when the vehicle is stationary.

Note

Audi connect is designed for use only with the provided SIM card. Audi AG is not liable for the consequences of using other SIM cards.

Tips

Read and follow the **notes about Audi connect** before starting it ⇨ *page 128*.

Setup

Requirements for Audi connect

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect. The following requirements must be met to establish a connection:

- The Audi connect SIM card must be inserted into the SIM card reader for the MMI.
- A data connection must be configured for Audi connect services.

Using the SIM card reader

Applies to: vehicles with SIM card reader



Fig. 112 Mini SIM card is pictured in actual size

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect.

Requirement

The vehicle is stationary.

The ignition must be switched on.

insert a SIM card

- ▸ Press the TEL button.
- ▸ Slide the mini SIM card into the card reader slot with the label facing up (contact surface facing down) ⇨ *fig. 112*. The angled corner of the SIM card must be at the left front corner. Then push the SIM card into the slot until it clicks into place.
- ▸ Enter the PIN for your SIM card.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.
- ▸ To connect to the Internet automatically in the future, select and then confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ To establish an Internet connection for Audi connect services, confirm the message that appears with **Accept**. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, the signal strength is indicated in the Infotainment system display status line with one or two symbols, depending on the connection type ③/④ ⇨ *page 101, fig. 101*.

You can now use Audi connect.

- ▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect**.
- ▸ Confirm the system prompt asking to connect to the Internet with **Yes, always if required**.

Removing the SIM card

- ▸ Press on the SIM card briefly. The card is released from the slot. Remove the SIM card.

Note

Audi connect is designed for use only with the provided SIM card. Audi AG is not liable for the consequences of using other SIM cards.

Tips

- – You can connect a cell phone with Bluetooth (handsfree) to make phone calls ⇨ *page 110*.
- – Audi does not provide support for other SIM cards. Audi recommends using only the provided SIM card.
- – You can specify when the MMI establishes an Internet connection. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect service no longer requires any data packets.
- – The data connection for Audi connect services is preconfigured at the factory. However, if you need to adjust the configuration, you can change the data connection at any time .

Configuration through myAudi

Activating/configuring specific Audi connect services

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

Some Audi connect services must be activated/configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time.

- – If you do not have a personal myAudi account yet, you can register online at my.audiusa.com.
- – Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.
- – Activate/configure the Audi connect services you would like for your vehicle in your myAudi account.
- – For some Audi connect services, you may also have to enter your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN when accessing services in the MMI to connect your vehicle to myAudi.

For detailed configuration information, see my.audiusa.com.

Logging into myAudi in the vehicle

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

To use some Audi connect services (such as Facebook), you must first connect your vehicle with myAudi to transfer your personal settings from your myAudi account.*

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Log in**.
- ▸ Enter your myAudi user data. **Or**: enter your 8-digit myAudi PIN.
- ▸ Confirm your entry with **OK**.

Then you can open your personal settings from your myAudi account in your vehicle.

Tips

You can receive your myAudi PIN if you have set up a myAudi account. For additional information, see my.audiusa.com.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Overview of Audi connect services

Basic functions

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect



Fig. 113 Audi connect home page with preview

If available, the **Audi connect** menu displays functions specific to certain services in the selection menu ⇨ *page 96* for that Audi connect service.

Basic functions are found in the options menu ⇨ *page 97* for the corresponding Audi connect service.

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect** > *the desired Audi connect service* > right control button.

Depending on the Audi connect service selected, the following functions are available:

Save as preview

You can display the preview in the overview of the selected Audi connect services ① ⇨ *fig. 113*.

Show on map

You can show selected contents on the map and use them for route guidance.

Read aloud

You can allow the MMI to read out the selected contents.

Navigate

If a city was added to an entry (such as **City events**), you can use it as a navigation destination in the MMI.

Refresh

The contents for the selected Audi connect service are refreshed.

Change search area

The set search area can be changed at any time. Additional information on search areas can be found under ⇨ *page 134*.

Close Audi connect service

Regardless of what function is selected, you can close an Audi connect service at any time and return to the Audi connect overview ⇨ *fig. 113*.

Weather

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

Information on current weather conditions as well as weather forecasts for the selected search area (for example, **In immediate vicinity**).

▸ Select and confirm **Weather**.

Flight information

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

Information on flights and current arrival/departure times in the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm **Flight information**.

You can select the desired information using the right control button.

City events

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

Information on events in various categories in the desired search area.

▸ Select and confirm **City events** > left control button > *category*.

Online news

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

Check the most current headlines of your favorite publications in the MMI.

▸ Select **Online news** > *headline*.

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Facebook

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

You can access the most important functions in your Facebook account through your MMI.

Requirement:

You must have a Facebook account.

You must have connected your myAudi account with Facebook.

You must have connected your vehicle with myAudi ⇨ *page 122*.

▸ Select **Facebook** > left control button > *desired function* (for example, **News Feed**).

The following categories can be selected in the **Facebook** menu:

– **News Feed**: new posts (for example, by friends or groups) are displayed.
– **Timeline**: your Facebook timeline is displayed.
– **Messages**: messages you have received are displayed.
– **Places nearby**: places nearby are displayed that, for example, were recommended by your friends. You can narrow the search further by entering categories.
– **Events**: events to which you were invited are displayed.

The following functions are available, depending on the Facebook category you have selected:

– **What's on your mind?**: you can publish a new Facebook status using pre-made templates or using customized myAudi templates.
– **Where are you?**: you can specify your current location and make it visible.

Tips

– You can find additional information on connecting your myAudi account with Facebook in the **Audi connect (myAudi)** operating manual at www.audi.com/myaudi.
– You can only connect *one* Facebook account with your myAudi account.
– Other settings such as account and privacy settings *cannot* be changed in the MMI. These changes must be made on the Facebook website.
– You can also create individual text templates online at my.audiusa.com.
– Audi connect makes it possible to access Facebook. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on Facebook.

Twitter

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

You can access the most important functions in your Twitter account through your MMI.

Requirement:

You must have a Twitter account.

You must have connected your myAudi account with Twitter.

You must have connected your vehicle with myAudi ⇨ *page 122*.

▸ Select **Twitter** > left control button > *desired function* (for example, **Trends**).

The following categories can be selected in the **Twitter** menu:

– **My Tweets**: News Feed and the Tweets you have posted are listed.
– **Home**: the Tweets for everyone you follow are displayed.
– **Trends**: topics on Twitter that are currently popular within a country.

Different functions are available depending on the Twitter category you have selected:

– **New tweet**: you can post a new tweet using pre-made templates or using individualized myAudi templates.
– **Refresh**: the selected Twitter function is refreshed.
– **Set as favorite**: set a Tweet as favorite to show you liked it.
– **Retweet**: you can quote a Tweet to share it with others. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tips

- You can find additional information on connecting your myAudi account with Twitter in the **Audi connect (myAudi)** operating manual at www.audi.com/myaudi.
- Other settings such as account, language, Tweet security and location settings *cannot* be changed in the MMI. These changes must be made on the Twitter website.
- You can create individual text templates in your myAudi account.
- You can only connect *one* Twitter account with your myAudi account.
- Audi connect makes it possible to access Twitter. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on Twitter.

Audi connect services in navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

The following Audi connect services are currently available:

- Navigation with **online map view** and **Street View** ⇨ *page 142*.
- **Point of Interest (POI) online search with voice recognition** (such as restaurants): plan route guidance using the MMI control panel and the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 104*.
- Set up destinations in your MMI using your **myAudi account** or **online map view**.
- **Online traffic information**: receive up-to-the-minute traffic information about accidents, road construction and other incidents ⇨ *page 143*.
- **Map updates**: import navigation map updates in your MMI using an SD card.

Tips

- For the **Map update** Audi connect service using an SD card, check the current software version in your vehicle and compare it with my.audiusa.com to see if a new version is available. You can also have the new navigation data installed by an Audi dealer, which can be done for an additional charge.
- More information on **map updates** can be found in the **Audi connect** Operating Manual under my.audiusa.com.

Audi connect services in the telephone

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

The following Audi connect services are currently available:

- Storing contacts on your computer using your **myAudi Account** and loading the contacts into the MMI directory ⇨ *page 118*.

Audi connect services in the Media menu

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi audio player and Audi connect

- **Wi-Fi audio player**: you can access the media center through Wi-Fi connected media players (such as smartphones) ⇨ *page 153*. The **Audi MMI connect** app also offers access to **Internet radio***.
- **Online media**: offers access to different online media services and operation through the MMI using the **Audi MMI connect** app.

Tips

For more information on the Wi-Fi audio player and supported devices, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Additional options

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button.

The following options are available in the Audi connect services overview:

- **Log in**: ⇨ *page 122, Logging into myAudi in the vehicle*
- **Connection manager**: ⇨ *page 167, Connection manager*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wi-Fi Hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can use the MMI as a Wi-Fi hotspot to connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices to the Internet. While driving, restricted use of non-secured, light, small wireless devices is only possible from the rear of the vehicle.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

The following settings can be modified in the **Wi-Fi settings** menu:

Wi-Fi mode

The MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated at the factory. Switch the Wi-Fi hotspot to **Hotspot** before establishing a connection between your vehicle and your Wi-Fi device.

- **Hotspot**: the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is active and visible to other devices. A connection can be established with new wireless devices.
- **Hotspot and client**: the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is active. An internet connection to a personal Wi-Fi hotspot (such as a smartphone) can be established. Using **Network search** ⇨ *page 126*, you can search for your personal hotspot and connect to the MMI.
- **Off**: the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated. An Internet connection is not possible.

Hotspot settings

The Wi-Fi connection between your vehicle and your Wi-Fi device (laptop, cell phone) is encrypted. To establish a connection, you must enter the following values when setting up your wireless device. You can change them if necessary.

- **Access point (SSID)**: name of the Wi-Fi network.
- **Password**: a random password was set at the factory for the MMI. The password can be changed. The WPA2 encryption method requires a password to be at least 8 characters long. Select a secure password.
- **Visible to others**: your Wi-Fi network visibility can be switched on or off.

Network search*

A list of available Wi-Fi networks in your area is displayed.

WARNING

- As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
- It is only safe to use laptops and similar mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
- Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also note the warnings in the "Airbag System" chapter under "Important Information on the Front Airbag System" ⇨ *page 192, Front airbags*.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

- A separate, paid mobile subscription may be needed to use the Wi-Fi hotspot. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
- Being able to receive the data packet from the internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot, may result in additional costs, especially when operating in foreign countries, depending on your cellular phone plan: the use of a flat rate data plan is highly recommended! You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
- Additional information can be found under www.audiusa.com/audiconnect

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Configuring the data connection

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

To use Audi connect services, a data connection must be configured.

- Select: MENU button > right control button > **Connection manager**.
- Select: right control button > **Online settings** > **Data connection settings**.

Using the **Data connection settings** menu, you can set when an Internet connection should be made. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect service no longer requires any data packets.

The following options can be selected:

Connect

- **On request**: a data connection is only established when confirmed.
- **Without request**: a data connection is automatically established to use Audi connect services.
- **Never**: a data connection is not established. Audi connect services cannot be accessed.

When a data connection is established, the symbol for an active data connection and the signal strength appear in the status line in the Infotainment system display ② / ③ ⇨ *page 101, fig. 101*.

An active data connection can be ended manually by setting the **Connection setup** to **Never**.

Data roaming

Data roaming is switched off at the factory. To use a data connection outside of the country, **Data roaming** must be switched on (☑). The setting is stored for the current SIM card or the cell phone that is currently connected.

Audi connect (MMI)

With this function, you can **Allow** or **Deny** the use of Audi connect services if the connection is set to **Without request** or **On request**.

Connection settings

The connection is configured automatically based on the SIM card being used. These values can be changed. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

- **APN**: the access point depends on the cell phone service provider and is assigned automatically.
- **User name**: the user name for your online profile is assigned by the cell phone service provider.
- **Password**: the password for your online profile is assigned by the cell phone service provider.

Storing changed connection settings: press the BACK button.

Reset configuration

An online profile is saved and configured automatically. The **Connection settings** that you changed manually are reset to the default settings.

WARNING

- As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
- It is only safe to use laptops and similar mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
- Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Read and follow the safety precautions in the separate vehicle owner's manual under "Important information about the front airbag system" in the "Airbag System" chapter.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tips

- When traveling in a different country, the data connection may be ended to prevent unplanned roaming charges, depending on the factory settings. You can only use Audi connect services in another country once you have activated the **Data roaming** option.
- For more information on roaming fees, contact Audi connect customer support at 877-505-AUDI (2834).
- The speed of the data connection may vary depending on the vehicle location, the coverage area of your cell phone service provider and if the recommended provider is used or not.
- A data connection cannot be established if incorrect data is entered in the connection settings.
- For more information on roaming charges, contact your cell phone service provider.
- The Wi-Fi hotspot reception quality depends on the signal strength and the availability of the mobile network. For more information, contact your current network provider.
- For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com/help/audi-connect.

About Audi connect

Audi connect services

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

Tips

- Audi connect services are only available with an existing or separate cell phone contract and only within the mobile network coverage area. There may be additional costs when connecting to the Internet using data packets, depending on your cell phone rates and particularly with international service. Based on the high data volume, having a flat rate data plan is highly recommended.
- You can only use services supported by Audi connect if you have the optional MMI Navigation plus equipment with MMI touch and Audi connect.
- Use of the LTE* mobile network standard is not available in every country. Contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or your cell phone service provider for additional information.
- Using Audi connect services requires a SIM card with data options and, when using LTE*, it also requires LTE options.
- Usage of Audi connect services depends on the availability of services through third party providers.
- Also note the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 110, Telephone*.
- Audi connect is designed for use only with the provided SIM card. Receiving data packets from the Internet will quickly increase the volume of data used. For more information, contact Audi connect customer support at 877-505-AUDI (2834).
- The Audi connect services are available in the USA. Audi connect services are currently not available in Canada or in Mexico.
- Availability, scope, providers, screen display and costs of services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, end device and rates. For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com/help/audi-connect.
- An initial registration/activation on the myAudi platform at my.audiusa.com is necessary to use some services. Your authorized Audi dealer or Audi connect customer support at 877-505-AUDI (2834) will be happy to provide information on options for extending usage and any costs that may result.
- It is only possible to use Audi connect services with a valid Audi connect SIM card.
- To ensure all of the Audi connect features work correctly, Audi recommends setting up data service and Wi-Fi packages with your network provider. Your network service provider can be authorized by law, through a judicial order or other lawful instructions, to disclose the position of your vehicle. For additional information on your cell phone service provider's privacy policies can be found in their Terms of Use. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The Audi connect services are a Wi-Fi/Internet-based system. If the system does not function correctly even though all of the requirements are met, please try again later or contact Audi connect customer support at 877-505-AUDI (2834).
– For detailed information on Audi connect and the Terms of Use, refer to www.audiusa.com/audiconnect.

Data protection

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

Tips

– You can find additional information in your MMI in the options menu ⇨ *page 97* for the selected Audi connect service and also on the Internet at www.audiusa.com/help/audi-connect.
– Your privacy is important to us.
– AUDI AG collects, processes, shares and transmits your personal information in accordance with legal regulations in order to ensure proper function and availability of the individual Audi connect services. You can view the complete, current and valid Audi connect data protection policy in your MMI. The myAudi website is available for to you to activate additional Audi connect services and to transfer data with your vehicle, among other services. A one-time registration is required to establish a connection to your vehicle. For this purpose, AUDI AG collects, processes, transmits and uses your required personal information as required for you to use the services provided by AUDI AG. Your information is not distributed to third parties. Using your cell phone with the help of your myAudi platform, you can transfer information for Audi connect services functions to your vehicle and allow specific information to be transmitted from your vehicle.
– By activating special information services that are part of your Audi connect portfolio, you can use these functions directly in your vehicle by entering data to confirm your identity (to use social networks, for example). To do this, the identification information you provided is forwarded with the request to the respective service provider. Then you can access your personal content using a secure connection. This content is displayed in the vehicle for your use. Your personal content is not stored within Audi AG. The necessary connection information is processed and used for providing services and the proper function of the services in accordance with applicable legal guidelines.
– By providing Audi connect services, Audi of America is authorized to collect, process, transmit and transfer information about you and your vehicle. Additional information can also be found in your MMI in the options menu ⇨ *page 97* for the selected Audi connect service.
– Information on our data protection measures in conjunction with the mobile Audi connect application can be found in the application's privacy policy. For additional information about the my.audiusa.com website or other applications, websites or online services connected to Audi, visit www.audiusa.com/privacy.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Troubleshooting

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

Problem	Solution
Audi connect services: individual Audi connect services are grayed out or not available.	Some Audi connect services must be activated/configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time. You can find detailed information online at https://my.audi.com.
Wi-Fi hotspot: it is not possible to connect through Wi-Fi.	Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Navigation

Opening navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents and on alternative routes, if desired.



Fig. 114 Example image: Enter destination menu

▸ Select: NAV/MAP button.

After opening the Navigation menu, the **Enter destination** menu ⇨ *fig. 114* appears in the Infotainment system display with the following information:

① Input field for free text search ⇨ *page 132*
② Home address ⇨ *page 133*
③ Last destinations ⇨ *page 132*
④ Stored favorites ⇨ *page 133*

If you have connected a cell phone with the MMI, your directory contacts will also be listed if they have navigation data assigned to them.

Your favorites ④ and directory contacts are only displayed in the **Enter destination** menu when you have entered one or more letters using the input field.

Map preview

– Select an entry from the list.

When selecting an entry from the list, the corresponding destination will always be shown to you as a map preview ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 114*.

Switching between the destination entry and the map

– Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed. **Or**: select the left control button > **Switch to map**.

WARNING

– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 95*.
– Obey all traffic laws when driving.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

Note

– If the driving directions conflict with traffic laws, obey the traffic laws.
– Adjust the volume of the navigation system so signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard clearly at all times.

Tips

– Snow and obstructions on the GPS antenna or interference caused by trees and large ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

buildings can impair satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.
– Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.

Entering a destination

Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can quickly and easily search destinations using the free text search and transfer them to route guidance.

Using the MMI touch control pad, you can enter the data for a navigation destination in any order all at once (for example, monument Washington). Likewise, you can search for points of interest, contacts, previous destinations or favorites to navigate to the desired address.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the input field appears.

– Write one or more search terms in the input field ① ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*. A list of all results found will appear in the Infotainment system display.
– Select and confirm a destination from the results list.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

The route is displayed as an overview in the map and the route guidance is already active.

Narrowing the search area

– Select: right control button > **Country/State selection**.

All countries/states are selected at the factory for the free text search. Using the **Country/State selection**, you can deselect the irrelevant countries/states to increase the search speed and narrow the results list.

Tips

– The MMI input suggestions depend on the last navigated destinations.
– Up to 50 entries can be stored in the last destinations list.
– Additional information on free text searching can be found under ⇨ *page 102*.

Loading last destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Your last destinations are automatically stored and can be directly loaded as a destination again.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.

Your last destinations will be listed directly in the **Enter destination** menu and are marked with the symbol ③ ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.

– Select and confirm a previous destination.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Delete last destinations

– Select and confirm a previous destination from the list.
– Select and confirm: right control button > **Delete**.
– Select and confirm **Delete this last destination** or **Delete all last destinations**.

The selected destination or all last destinations is/are deleted and are no longer displayed in the free text search.

Entering an address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Enter address**.

– Select and confirm a line (such as **Street**, **House number** or **Country/State**) and enter the desired information.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A point on the map can be used as the destination.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

– **Adjusting the scale**: turn the control knob to the left/right to move the crosshairs more quickly.
– **Moving the crosshairs**: press the control knob. The crosshairs are shown on the map. Move the crosshairs to the destination using the MMI touch control pad ⇨ *page 98*. To hide the crosshairs again, press the BACK button.
– **Setting as destination**: press the control knob when the crosshairs are shown. If necessary, select and confirm **Add as stopover** and then **Start route guidance**.

Additional information about the location of the crosshairs: if you select map content with crosshairs, the available information is displayed (such as the name of the city or points of interest) ⑥.

Setting a home address/favorite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can easily and quickly start route guidance to your home address using the home address function. Favorites allow easier access to other frequently used destinations.

Requirement: a home address/favorite must be stored ⇨ *page 136*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.

Setting a home address as the destination

Your home address will be displayed directly in the **Enter destination** menu and can be identified with the symbol ②.

– Select and confirm the home address.
– If necessary, select and confirm **Create now** and enter an address.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Setting a favorite as the destination

– Enter one or more letters into the free text search input field. The favorites found are displayed and marked with the symbol ④.
– Select and confirm the desired favorite.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Tips

– Additional information about the home address can be found under ⇨ *page 136*.
– Additional information about favorites can be found under ⇨ *page 137*.

Setting a destination from the directory

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can navigate directly to destinations in the directory.

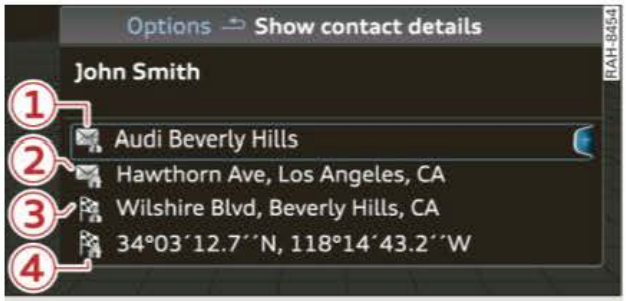


Fig. 115 Possible stored locations in the directory

Requirement: an address with navigation data or a destination must already be assigned to a contact.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Directory** > *a contact*.

The directory/contacts are shown in alphabetical order and are marked with symbols to indicate the storage location:

① Business address
② Private address
③ Business destination
④ Private destination

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Select and confirm an address or a destination. When you have selected a destination, the route guidance can be started directly.
– Check the address input again when selecting an address.
– Then select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Additional directory functions in the navigation system can be found under ⇨ *page 137*.

Tips

– Addresses that have been imported from your cell phone into the MMI can also be used as a destination.
– If a contact is grayed out in the directory, this contact has neither a destination nor an address assigned to them.

Entering a point of interest

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

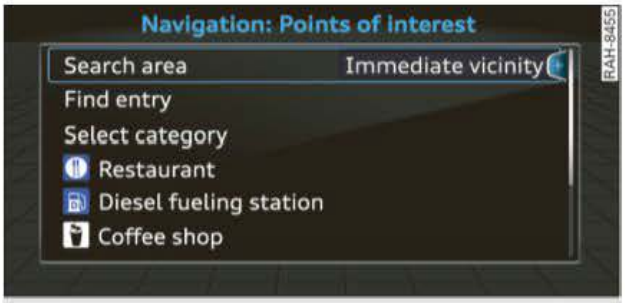


Fig. 116 Entering a point of interest

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Points of interest**.

– **Changing the search area**: select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.
– **Searching for a point of interest in a specific category**: select **Select category**. Select and confirm a category such as **Restaurants**.

The following search categories are available:

In immediate vicinity: points of interest can be selected from different categories. The points of interest are listed starting from the immediate vicinity of the vehicle up to a radius of approximately 125 miles (200 km).

Along the route: points of interest along the route can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest are located directly along or in the immediate vicinity of the calculated route.

In vicinity of destination/Vicinity of stopover: the points of interest can likewise be selected from different categories in the vicinity of the destination or stopover. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot at the destination.

In new city: enter the name of the desired city. Points of interest can be selected from various categories. This function allows you to search for points of interest in any city regardless of the active route guidance or the vehicle position.

Tips

– Additional information on myAudi points of interest* can be found in the **Audi connect** operating manual under www.audi.com/myaudi.
– Distances to points of interest are displayed as a straight-line distance (open arrow) from your current location. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically (solid arrow). The list of found points of interest is not resorted when this happens.
– There may be entries in the list that cannot be displayed completely due to their length. If you select these list entries using the control knob, detailed information about the selected list entry will be shown automatically after several seconds.

Point of interest online search

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

You can search for points of interest on the Internet.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 121*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ Select: left control button > **Online search**. The search area last set is shown in the input field.

– **Changing the search area**: select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.
– **Searching for online destinations in the selected search area**: enter a new city/state if necessary. Enter the search term, such as restaurant. Select and confirm an online destination. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.
– **Searching for online destinations in a specific category**: select **Select category**. Select and confirm a category such as **Restaurants**.

Find which search areas are available under ⇨ *page 134, Entering a point of interest*.

You can search for online destinations using the voice recognition system ⇨ *table on page 107*.

Tips

– Refer to the notes in the **About Audi connect** chapter ⇨ *page 128*.
– For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com/help/audi-connect.

Finding destinations from a myAudi account

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

Import destinations from your myAudi account into the MMI.

Requirement: you must have a myAudi account set up at http://my.audiusa.com. You must have a vehicle stored in your myAudi account and you must have a destination stored.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
▸ Select: left control button > **myAudi contacts**.
▸ If necessary, enter your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN. The contacts stored in myAudi are displayed.

– Select and confirm a contact.
– Select and confirm a private or business destination.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Tips

– You only need to enter your myAudi user data one time.
– You can receive your myAudi PIN if you have set up a myAudi account. For more information, go to www.audi.com/myaudi.
– Additional information can be found on the Internet at www.audiusa.com/help/audi-connect.

Entering a destination using geocoordinates

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Geo coordinates**.

– Select and confirm either **Latitude** or **Longitude**.
– Turn the control knob to the left/right to change the latitude/longitude.
– Press the control knob to confirm your input.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Entering a stopover

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter an additional stopover when route guidance is active.



Fig. 117 Current route guidance with stopover

Requirement: a destination must be entered.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Entering a destination as a stopover

– Enter a destination in the input line ⇨ *page 132*.
– Select and confirm a destination from the results list.
– Select and confirm **Add as stopover**.

Deleting a stopover

– Turn the control knob up until the active route guidance is shown.
– Select and confirm **Cancel route guidance** under the stopover ① ⇨ *fig. 117*. Select and confirm the system prompt if necessary. The stopover is deleted.

Additional options when entering a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the selected function, the following additional options may be available when entering a destination:

Cancel route guidance: ⇨ *page 136*.

Map settings: ⇨ *page 141*.

Show location on map: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. The destination entered is displayed on the map.

Parking at this location: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. All parking options near the selected location are displayed in the Infotainment system.

POIs at this location: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. All parking options near the selected location are displayed in the Infotainment system.

Delete: the selected entry is deleted. You can delete individual entries or all entries (for example, favorites or last destinations).

Audi connect for this location: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. Allows you to search for items in the vicinity of the selected location, such as **City events** or **Travel information**.

Online traffic data*: receiving online traffic information ⇨ *page 143* can be switched on or off.

Country/State selection: select all countries/states from the list (☑) that should be included in the free text search ⇨ *page 132*.

Store as favorite: ⇨ *page 137*.

Tips

Information on online traffic data can also be found on the Internet at www.audiusa.com/help/audi-connect.

Canceling route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

▸ Push the control knob up. The active route guidance is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 117*.
▸ Select and confirm the destination that you would like to delete. The destination is deleted. **Or**: select the right control button > **Cancel route guidance**.

Creating a home address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.

Storing a home address

– Select and confirm **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
– Select and confirm **Create now**. **Or**: select and confirm a destination > right control button > **Store as home address**.

A home address will be stored in the MMI regardless of the connected cell phone. This home address is always available even if a cell phone is not connected to the MMI.

Editing the home address

– Select **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
– Select: right control button > **Edit home address**.
– Select and confirm a new destination as the home address. ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The selected destination is stored as the new home address.

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.

– **Storing an existing destination as a favorite**: search for the desired destination using the input field. **Or**: select and confirm a destination from the list. Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**.
– **Renaming stored favorites**: select: left control button > **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Rename favorite**.
– **Moving stored favorites**: select: left control button > **Favorites** > a favorite from the list > right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the desired position.
– **Deleting stored favorites**: select and confirm a favorite > right control button > **Delete this favorite** / **Delete all favorites**.

Creating directory contacts

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Two addresses (private/business) can be assigned as destinations for each contact in the directory.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.

Storing a destination as a contact in the directory

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI.

– Select a destination > right control button > **Add destination to contact**.
– Select and confirm **Add business destination** or **Add private destination**.
– Enter a name. **Or**: select and confirm a directory contact from the list.
– Select and confirm **Save business card**.

Additional settings

Navigation settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

Show alternative routes

Up to three route suggestions and their properties are displayed on the overview map when this function is switched on. See also ⇨ *page 138*

Gas station message

When this function is switched on, a message is displayed if the fuel gauge goes below the reserve marking. Confirming this message displays a list of gas stations in the area. When a gas station is selected, route guidance from the current vehicle position is calculated.

Presentation mode

The presentation mode helps you to plan and follow a route without moving the vehicle. You can **Select starting point** when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the vehicle position. Start presentation mode to simulate route guidance.

Route criteria

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 118 Possible route criteria ▸

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Route criteria**.

① **HOV lanes**[1]: with the **Avoid** function, HOV lanes are excluded when calculating routes. When **Allow** is selected, the MMI will route you through HOV lanes and show them on the map.

②**Highways**/ ③**Toll roads**/ ④**Ferries**: if the navigation system should not include highways, toll roads or ferries - if possible - when calculating routes, you can select the **Avoid** function.

Voice guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Voice guidance**.

Voice guidance: voice guidance can be **complete** or **shortened**. With the **Traffic** function, voice guidance prompts are only given when there are traffic incidents on your route. When **Off** is selected, no voice guidance is given.

Voice guidance during phone call: voice guidance during a phone call can be switched on or off.

Entertainment fader: ⇨ *page 170*.

Voice guidance volume: ⇨ *page 170*.

Blocking a route

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Requirement: a destination must be entered and the route guidance must be started.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Block route**.

When route guidance is active, the calculated route will avoid the area you have specified (maximum: 20 km), if possible. The navigation system calculates an alternative route.

The route to be avoided that you have entered applies only to the current route and must be reset, if necessary.

The areas you have selected to avoid will appear with red and white shading on the map.

Displaying alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 119 Alternative routes display

Requirement: a destination must be entered and the route guidance must be started.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Show alternative routes**.

Up to three route suggestions and their properties are displayed on the map when this function is switched on ⇨ *fig. 119*.

If available, the following information will appear on the route suggestions:

– Route type (fast ①, fast alternative ②, economic route ③)
– Distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time
– Traffic congestion along the route including time delays

The route that was calculated according to the route criteria you selected is shown on the map. Additional route properties (such as ferry or car-train connections) are displayed ④ ⇨ *fig. 119*. ▶

[1] High occupancy vehicle

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional information about individual route criteria can be found in ⇨ *page 137*.

Using the control knob, you can select the possible routing for the alternative routes and show them on map Select and confirm the desired route that you would like to use for route guidance.

Map

Operating the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 120 Map with crosshairs turned on

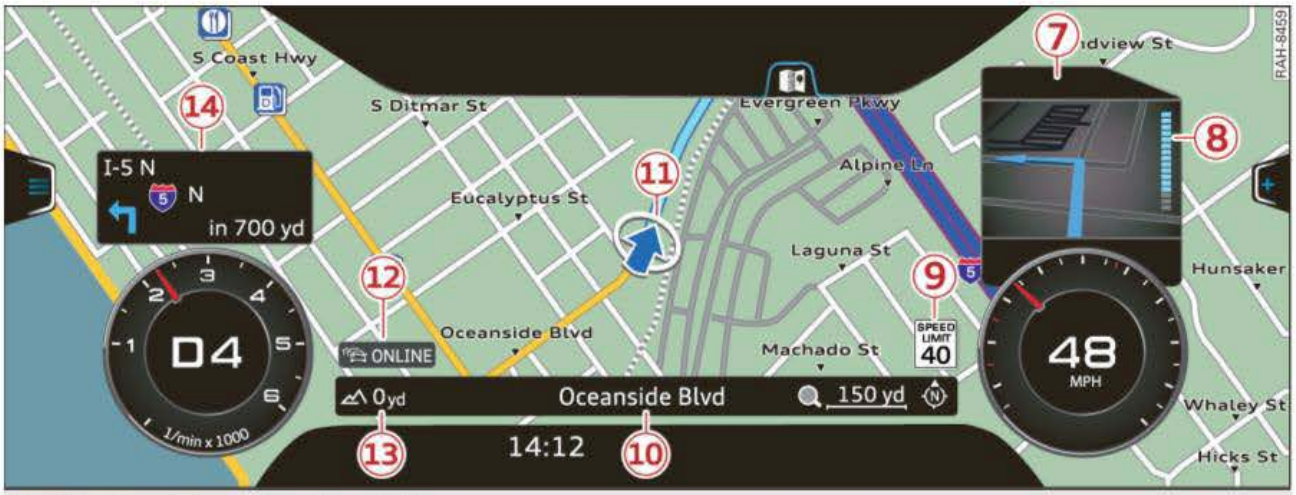


Fig. 121 Map with crosshairs turned off

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *fig. 121*.

Zooming in/out on the map

– Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. As an alternative, you can also zoom in/out on the map using the MMI touch* ⇨ *page 98*. **Or**: turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇨ *page 20*.

Turning the crosshairs on/off

– **Switching the crosshairs on**: press the control knob in the map view.
– **Switching the crosshairs off**: press the BACK button.

When the crosshairs are switched on:

① Orientation: the map is either displayed as a **2D north position map** or in **2D - heading up** direction. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

② Scale: turn the control knob to the left or right to decrease or increase the scale.

③ When the **Auto zoom** function is switched on, an "A" for "Automatic" is displayed.

④ Crosshairs: move the crosshairs in the desired direction using the MMI touch control pad and set a point on the map as the destination or have information about the focal point displayed.

⑤ Map content (points of interest, favorites): if there are multiple POIs in the immediate vicinity, they will be shown stacked on the map.

⑥ Additional information on the crosshairs position: if you move the crosshairs to a location on the map, available information for the current crosshairs position is displayed. Press the control knob to open destination details or to start route guidance. When the crosshairs are turned off, the road being currently driven on is shown.

⑦ Display of an upcoming maneuver. If there is no upcoming maneuver, the distance and calculated arrival time to the destination/stopover is displayed in this location.

⑧ If a turn arrow is displayed, a bar graph turns on. The fewer bars are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn.

When the crosshairs are switched off:

⑨ Speed limit display[1]: display of the maximum permitted speed on the expressways and highways.

⑩ Road currently being driven on. When the vehicle is stationary, "offroad" is displayed here.

⑪ Vehicle location

⑫ Display of active traffic information (online or TMC)

⑬ Altitude display

⑭ Route information: different information will be displayed during active route guidance (for example, the upcoming maneuver including calculated distance and street names). The display also provides traffic information or points of interest on the current route.

Tips

Depending on the rerouting that is selected ⇨ *page 137*, the traffic congestion along the route may already be included in the route calculation.

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- Select: left control button > *desired function*.

Switch to destination input

The **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 114*.

Traffic messages

Current traffic information is displayed in the Infotainment system display. ⇨ *page 143*.

Route list

The route list can only be displayed when route guidance is active and contains information regarding the route, the names of the streets and the length of the route sections. When traveling on highways, possible parking lots and rest areas are shown, which you can select as a stopover.

Points of interest (POIs) along the route

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

Searching for points of interest along your current route ⇨ *page 134*.

Additional options on the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- Press the right control button. ▶

[1] Only applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Depending on the function selected, the following options can also be selected under the **Map** menu:

Cancel route guidance: ⇨ *page 136*.

Map settings: ⇨ *page 141*.

Route criteria: ⇨ *page 137*.

Voice guidance: ⇨ *page 138*.

Navigation settings: ⇨ *page 137*.

Online traffic data*: ⇨ *page 142*.

Block route: ⇨ *page 138*.

Show alternative routes: ⇨ *page 138*.

Parking along the route: parking options near the vehicle are displayed.

POIs along the route: points of interest near the vehicle are displayed.

Save current position: you can save your current vehicle position as a favorite ⇨ *page 137* or save it as a contact in the directory ⇨ *page 137*.

Audi connect for this location*: allows you to search for **City events** or **Weather** at the entered location.

Country information: you can display the applicable urban and rural speed limits for any country/state. This information will be automatically shown to you in the route information (14) ⇨ *page 139, fig. 120* when the speed limit is exceeded, if this function is activated ⇨ *page 141*.

Map settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

Day/night map

Day/Night: the map is displayed with a light/dark background.

Automatic: when the lights switch on, the map colors switch from day to night.

Map view

Standard ⇨ *page 139, fig. 120*.

Google Earth ⇨ *page 142, fig. 122*

Traffic ⇨ *page 142*

Map orientation

Destination: the map indicates the destination and is oriented to the north.

2D - heading up/2D north position map: the current vehicle position is displayed. The map is oriented in the direction of travel or to the north.

3D position map: when this function is switched on, the current vehicle position is shown on a three-dimensional map and oriented in the direction of travel. At a scale of 62 miles (100 km) and larger, the map is oriented to the north.

Overview: the entire route from the vehicle position to the destination or the next stopover is displayed on the map. The map scale depends on the length of the route and adapts automatically. The map is oriented to the north.

Route information

The display of route information such as the current road being driven on, upcoming maneuvers, traffic information or points of interest along the route can be switched on/off.

Auto zoom

On: the map scale is adapted automatically depending on the type of road being traveled (expressway, highway, other roads) so that you always have an optimal overview of the road ahead. The scale is also automatically adapted when there are upcoming maneuvers to provide a better detailed view.

Off: the map scale you have chosen is kept.

Map content

Map content, such as traffic information, favorites or restaurants, can be displayed or hidden (☑).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Online map view

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

With the online map view, you can display the map with satellite images.



Fig. 122 Online map view

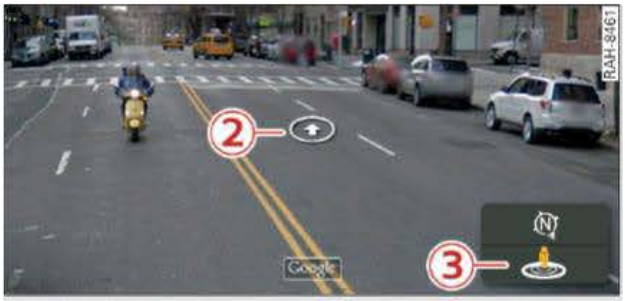


Fig. 123 Map view with online Street View

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 121*.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Google Earth**.

The map display is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, which are then combined with the roadways from the **Standard** map view. There are two gigabytes of memory space in the MMI memory that can be used to temporarily store the map or navigation data that was received. This is roughly the amount required for the map/navigation data for a 2,500 mile (4,000 km) route. As long as the satellite images loaded for route guidance are stored, you can use them without having an active data connection.

Street View

With Street View, you can explore many places in the world through the eyes of a pedestrian. Street View is available when the symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 122* is displayed in the crosshairs mode.

Activating street view: turn the control knob to a scale less than 30 m.

The following functions are then available:

– **Exploring an area step-by-step**: press the control knob when the symbol ② is displayed.
– **Zooming in or out on the current view in four stages**: turn the control knob to the left or to the right ③.
– **Navigating in street view**: move your finger on the MMI touch in the desired direction.

Additional information

Showing additional information in the Infotainment system display can be switched on in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 141*. To display any applicable additional information, move the crosshairs onto an item on the map and press the control knob.

Tips

– The stored online map view data can be deleted in **Factory settings** > **Navigation and online memory** ⇨ *page 166*.
– The online map view is an Audi connect service and is regularly updated when the function is opened. The process may take several seconds.
– When the online map view is switched on using the 3D map orientation, the MMI display automatically switches to the 2D map orientation when driving through tunnels.
– For safety reasons, the Street View functions can only be used when the vehicle is stationary.
– Refer to the notes in the **About Audi connect** chapter ⇨ *page 128*.
– Additional information can be found on the Internet at www.audiusa.com/help/audiconnect.

Accessing traffic information

Auto rerouting (traffic)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

When receiving traffic information through TMC/online - depending on availability - you can have ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the MMI navigate you around traffic incidents, if possible. Rerouting must be switched on for this ⇨ *page 137*.

Reception of traffic information is indicated by the TMC or ONLINE symbol on the map.

Traffic information (TMC)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**.

Reception of traffic information is indicated by the TMC symbol on the map:

Multiple traffic messages are summarized in the overview under the corresponding street names or highway names.

- – **Displaying all traffic messages for a street/ highway**: select and confirm the symbol. A list of all the traffic messages for the selected street/highway is displayed.
- – **Opening a detailed view of traffic information**: select and confirm the traffic report from the list.
- – **Displaying the selected traffic information on the map**: select and confirm the right control button > **Show on map**. The shaded line shows the street and the length of the traffic jam.
- – **Displaying the next traffic message on the map**: press the control knob.

Traffic information display

Colored warning symbols: traffic incidents on your route are shown in the upper section of the list and are sorted according to distance.

Warning symbols with ⮌: avoided traffic incidents.

Grayed out warning symbols: traffic incidents that are not on your route. They are sorted according to road type (expressway, highway, other road), country and name.

Tips

Critical traffic information, such as warnings about wrong-way drivers, is automatically displayed. To hide the traffic information, press the BACK button or the control knob.

- – TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. For more information, please contact Sirius Canada.

Better route

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic information through TMC, your MMI calculates a better route - if available - and the possible time saved for the current route guidance. You can decide yourself which route you would like to use.

Requirement: the route guidance must be active, rerouting must be set to **Manual** ⇨ *page 137* and the map must be displayed.

If your MMI has calculated a better route than the current route guidance, the message **A better route is available.** is displayed on the map along with the time that may be saved.

Apply better route

- – Press the control knob. **Or**: select the left control button > **Traffic messages**. The better route with the calculated arrival time is displayed.
- – Select and confirm the better route.
- – The better route will be used for the rest of the route guidance.

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

The MMI can receive real-time traffic information about traffic congestion, accidents, road construction and other incidents from the Internet.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 121*.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

- – **Switching online traffic information on**: press the right control button and switch **Online traffic data** on (☑). ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **Switching traffic map view on**: for an optimal view of traffic information, select: NAV/MAP button > right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Traffic**.

You can also display the **online traffic information** in the online map view ⇨ *page 142* or the standard map view ⇨ *page 139, fig. 120*.

Traffic information display

① **Green**: traffic is moving freely

② **Red**: congestion

③ **Orange**: stop-and-go traffic

Shaded markings indicate the length of the congestion.

Colored warning symbols: there is a traffic incident immediately ahead on the route.

Grayed out warning symbols: traffic incidents that are not on your route.

Red warning symbol: all warning symbols will be red when route guidance is not active.

The display of colored markings, warning symbols, etc. can be set in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 141*

Traffic information is switched on at the factory. You can switch off the reception of online traffic information at any time.

Tips

– Online traffic information is not available in Canada.
– Refer to the notes in the **About Audi connect** chapter ⇨ *page 128*.
– Every vehicle with the **Online traffic data** function switched on has the most accurate reports of traffic situations as well as traffic forecasting. Your vehicle transmits and processes its anonymous, encrypted position information at regular intervals to the traffic data provider. In case you do not want to use this, you can switch off the **Online traffic information** function at any time.
– The **online traffic information** network is still currently not available in all countries, nor is the coverage nationwide. Additional information can be found on the Internet at www.audiusa.com/help/audi-connect.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Problem	Solution
Free text search: the desired destination cannot be found.	The destination is possibly not entered in the navigation database. **Or**: check the spelling of the search term and whether the right country/state was selected using the **Country/State selection** ⇨ *page 132* for the free text search.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio

Accessing the radio

The radio supports the FM, AM and SiriusXM (satellite radio) bands. Using the HD Radio receiver also allows you to receive radio stations on the FM and AM band in digital format.*



Fig. 124 FM station list (HD Radio FM)



Fig. 125 SiriusXM station list

▸ Press the RADIO button.

After opening the radio, the last opened station list is displayed.

Selecting a station: select and confirm a station from the station list. FM/AM stations that can be received by digital radio are marked with the HD radio symbol Ⓐ. If reception quality declines, the radio automatically switches to the analog FM/AM station depending on availability. Digital HD Radio stations* may contain multiple additional stations*. The available additional stations* are listed under the radio station. If you lose reception, the additional stations* are muted since they can no longer be received.

Setting the frequency band: press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is set.

Updating the station list: station lists are updated automatically.

The following information is displayed in the station lists:

① Favorites

The station is stored as a favorite. The symbol shows the stored location in the favorites list (for example, 21).

③ Frequency

④ Station name

⑤ Channel number

If there is a loss of radio signal (SiriusXM*), the following system information is displayed in the station list:

NoSignal: the tuner is currently not receiving a satellite signal Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 125*.

The system information turns off when the radio stations are received again.

Tips

- HD Radio reception is not available in Canada.
- Contact the SiriusXM* provider if you would like to receive satellite programming.
- Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.
- Satellite radio is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.
- iTunes tagging* is not supported by all radio stations.

Radio functions

Free text search



Fig. 126 Input field and results list for free text search ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **Opening the free text search**: when in a station list, keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field is displayed.
– **Using the free text search**: ⇨ *page 102, Free text search*.

Stations from the favorites list ③ are displayed in the results list ① ⇨ *fig. 126*. The symbol ② indicates which station list you switched to based on the station selection.

Additional options

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button.

The following options are available depending on the frequency band:

– **Sound settings**: ⇨ *page 169*.
– **Store as favorite**: ⇨ *page 147, Favorites*.
– **Delete all entries**: all entries are deleted in the **Last stations** view.
– **Tag this song for iTunes***: connect your Apple device with the Audi music interface* on your MMI. Select and confirm **Tag this song for iTunes**. The track that is currently playing is stored on your Apple device. Synchronize your Apple device with iTunes. The tagged track will display the next time you open your iTunes media center. If there is no Apple device connected, the tagged track are stored temporarily in the MMI (maximum of 50 tracks). Once you connect your Apple device to the Audi music interface, the tags are stored on the device.
– **Manual station tuning**: the frequency bars are displayed. Select and confirm the desired frequency.
– **Seek**: the radio tunes to the previous or next receivable station.
– **Scan**: all stations are played for several seconds each.
– **Radio settings**: ⇨ *page 147*.

Radio text

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > a frequency band (for example, FM) > a station.
▸ Select: right control button > **Radio text**.

Information that accompanies the program (such as artist, composer, track) is displayed.

– **Browsing through radio text entries**: turn the control knob to the left or right.

View: additional station information



Fig. 127 Radio view: additional station information

Requirement: you must be tuned to a radio station. The **Additional station information** option is switched on ⇨ *page 147*.

① Radio text availability

Radio text is available for the selected station. See ⇨ *page 146*.

② iTunes tagging

The **Tag this song for iTunes** option is available for the set station. See ⇨ *page 146, Additional options*.

③ FM HD Radio

The station is received through FM HD Radio.

Displaying a station list: turn the control knob. **Or**: press the BACK button.

Radio menu

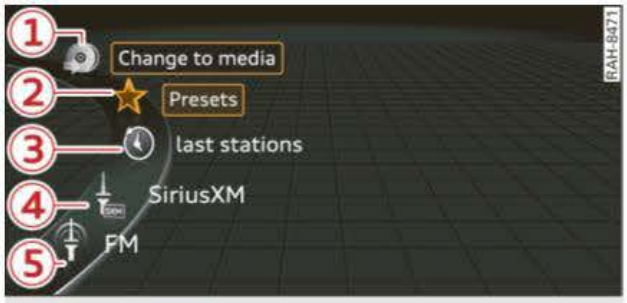


Fig. 128 Radio menu example

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the frequency band: select and confirm the desired frequency band in the radio menu ⇨ *fig. 128*. **Or**: press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is set. The station list is displayed.

① Change to media

The **Media** menu is displayed. See ⇨ *page 159, Playing media*.

② Favorites

The favorites list is displayed. See ⇨ *page 147, Favorites*.

③ Last stations

The last stations listened to from all frequency bands are shown in the list. Select and confirm a station for immediate playback.

④ SiriusXM*

The **SiriusXM*** station list is displayed.

⑤ FM

The FM station list is displayed.

Additional frequency bands

Depending on availability, you can select additional frequency bands in the selection menu.

Favorites

You can store your favorite stations from every frequency band in the favorites list.

▸ Select: the RADIO button > **Favorites**.

Storing favorites: press the RADIO button.

– Select: *an entry from the list* > right control button > **Store as favorite**. **Or**: hold down the control knob for several seconds.
– **Or**: select: left control button > **Presets** > a free memory space > a frequency band > *an entry from the list*.

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

– **Listening to a favorite**: select and confirm *a favorite from the list*.
– **Move favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Move favorite**. **Or**: hold down the control knob for several seconds. Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.
– **Deleting a favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

Additional settings

Radio settings

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Radio settings**.

The following settings can be selected, depending on the band that is selected:

FM/AM HD Radio*

You can switch HD Radio reception on or off.

Station sorting (SiriusXM*)

You can set the station sorting for SiriusXM station lists* by:

– **Channel number**: the stations are sorted in ascending order according to their station number.
– **Channel name**: the stations are listed in alphabetical order.
– **First category, then channel number**: the stations are sorted by their category and then by their channel numbers.
– **First the category, then the channel name**: the stations are sorted by their category and then by their channel names.

Category filter (SiriusXM*)

The stations shown in the station list can be filtered by your personal preferences and by program type. The program categories that you can select depend on what is offered by your provider. Select the **All categories** option to deactivate all filter options and display all available stations in the satellite station list.

Additional station information

When the function is ☑ switched on and station or favorites lists are open, the display will switch after approximately five seconds to the **Additional station information** view ⇨ *page 146*. ▶

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Depending on availability, information about the set station (such as station name, artist, slide show, station logo) is displayed in this view.

Preferred picture view

You can set your preferred picture view for the **Additional station information** display ⇨ *page 146*.

– **Station logo**: the station logo is displayed, depending on availability.
– **Cover art**: the album cover or genre cover is displayed, depending on availability.

Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. The **Cover art** option must be selected ⇨ *page 148,* **Preferred picture view**.

When the ☑ function is switched on, the album cover or genre cover for the song being played is loaded from the Gracenote online database, depending on availability.

Subscription status (SiriusXM)*

This option is available when your subscription is about to expire or has already expired. The expiration date of your license is displayed.

Call to SiriusXM*: the contact information for your satellite radio provider is displayed. To call your satellite radio provider using the MMI, press **Call to SiriusXM***.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
A station with poor reception is no longer displayed in the station list once you switch to a different station.	Store the station as a favorite in advance. Access the favorite through the favorites list ⇨ *page 147*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Media

Introduction

There are various media drives and connections available in the MMI. You can play, for example, audio/video files from the Jukebox* or connect your mobile device to the Audi music interface* and operate it through the MMI.

Notes

General information

Media and format restrictions: the MMI (including the SD card reader and the USB storage device connection*) was tested with a variety of products and media on the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices or media and audio/video* files may not be recognized, may play only with restrictions or may not play at all.

Digital Rights Management: please note that the audio/video* files are subject to copyright protection.

The media drives do not play files that are protected by DRM and that are identified with the symbol.

Data security: never store important data on SD cards, the Jukebox*, CDs/DVDs or mobile devices. Audi AG is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.

Loading times: the more files/folders/playlists that are on a storage medium, the longer it will take to load the audio/video files*. Audi recommends using storage media that only contain audio/video files*. To decrease the time it takes to load audio/video files*, create subfolders (for example, for the artist or album). The loading time will also increase when importing files.

Additional information: when playing, audio files are automatically displayed with any additional information that is stored (such as the artist, track and album cover). If this information is not available on the storage medium, the MMI will check the Gracenote metadata database. However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed.

Restricted functionality: reset the **Media settings** to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted ⇨ *page 166*.

Reset the **Jukebox*** to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted ⇨ *page 166*.

For information about the properties of supported media and file formats, refer to ⇨ *page 157*.

CD/DVD mode

CD/DVD and format restrictions: the functionality of individual storage media may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities. Audio CDs or video DVDs with copy protection, CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard and multisession CDs may have limited playback or may not play at all. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession is not supported for DVDs.

Using CDs/DVDs, the CD drive or the DVD drive: to ensure correct, high-quality playback and to prevent damage to the drive or disc reading errors, always store CDs/DVDs in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight. Do *not* use:

- Damaged, dirty or scratched CDs/DVDs
- Single CDs/DVDs (3 inch/8 cm diameter)
- CD/DVDs that are not round
- CDs/DVDs with labels
- Protective rings
- Cleaning CDs

Thermal protection switch: CD/DVD playback may be temporarily unavailable if outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold. A thermal protection switch is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the laser.

Laser devices: laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 to 4 in accordance with DIN IEC 76 (CO) 6/VDE 0837. The optical readers that are installed conform to safety class 1. Lasers in this class are very weak and well shielded, so there is no danger if used correctly.

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Media drives

SD card reader

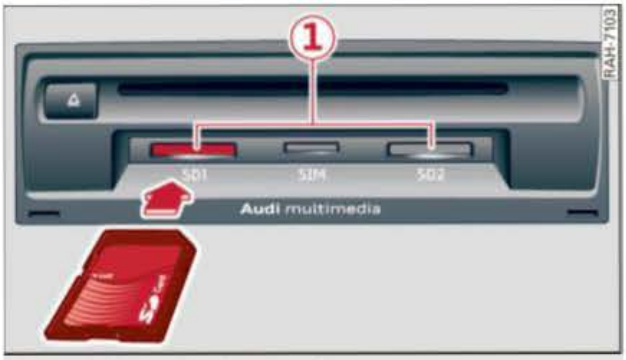


Fig. 129 Inserting the SD card

The SD card reader is located in the glove compartment (19) ⇨ *page 6, fig. 2*.

– **Inserting the SD card**: the angled corner of the SD card must point toward the right front. The writing on the SD card faces up and the contact surface faces down. Slide the SD card into the card reader slot (1) until you feel the SD card click into place ⇨ *fig. 129*.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted SD card contains supported audio/video files ⇨ *page 157*.
– **Removing the SD card**: press briefly on the SD card.

The SD card reader is accessed and operated through the MMI (3) ⇨ *page 159, fig. 134*.

Note

Only use one-piece SD cards. If adapter cards (SD cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive and impair the functionality.

Tips

Always keep the SD card in a suitable case to protect it from dirt, dust particles and other damage.

DVD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a DVD drive

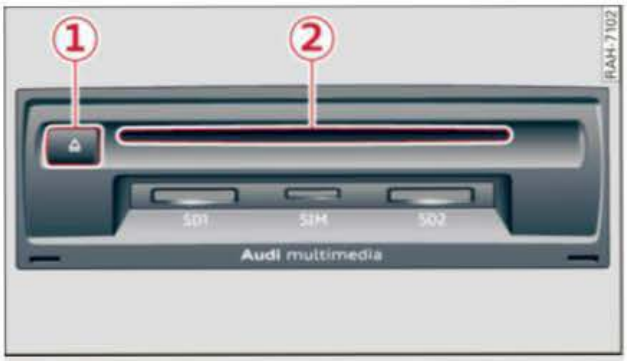


Fig. 130 DVD drive

The DVD drive is located in the glove compartment (19) ⇨ *page 6, fig. 2*.

– **Loading a CD/DVD**: the CD/DVD is pulled in automatically. Slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot (2) with the label facing up ⇨ *fig. 130*.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted CD/DVD contains supported audio/video* files ⇨ *page 157*.
– **Ejecting a CD/DVD**: press the button (1).

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within approximately ten seconds after ejecting it.

The DVD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI (2) ⇨ *page 159, fig. 134*.

Note

– Never force a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs/DVDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD/DVD and damage the drive.

Tips

The CD/DVD playback is not ensured with audio files that have a high data rate.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a CD drive

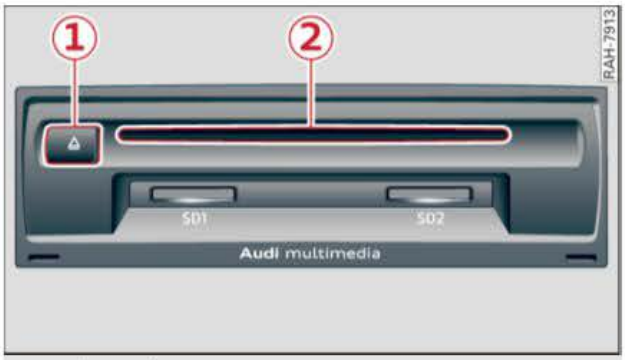


Fig. 131 CD drive

The CD drive is located in the glove compartment (19) ⇨ *page 6, fig. 2*.

– **Loading a CD**: the CD is pulled in automatically. Slide the CD straight into the slot (2) with the label facing up ⇨ *fig. 131*.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted CD contains supported audio files ⇨ *page 158, CD drive*.
– **Ejecting a CD**: press the button (1).

The CD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the slot within ten seconds of ejecting it.

The CD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 159*.

Note

– Never force a CD into the drive. The CD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD and damage the drive.

Tips

CD playback cannot be guaranteed with audio files that have a high data rate.

Jukebox

Applies to: vehicles with Jukebox

Play your favorite music and video files from the Jukebox. The Jukebox memory capacity is approximately 10 GB.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 159* is displayed. Select and confirm **Jukebox**.

Playing the Jukebox

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files.

The Jukebox is accessed and operated through the MMI (1) ⇨ *page 159, fig. 134*.

Displaying Jukebox memory capacity

Select the right control button > **Jukebox memory capacity**. Information about the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks is displayed.

Deleting tracks from the Jukebox[1)]

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files.

– **Deleting an entry**: select the entry from the Jukebox media center. Select: right control button > **Delete from Jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.
– The status of the deleting process is shown in the MMI. Jukebox playback stops during the deletion process and starts again automatically once the deletion is complete.

Adding to the Jukebox

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 159* is displayed. Select one of the following sources to copy to the Jukebox: SD card, CD-ROM, DVD-ROM*, USB storage device*.

Requirement: the media center (for example, tracks, albums) must be open.

– **Selecting an entry**: select an entry from the media center. Select: right control button > **Copy to Jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**. ▶

1) Not in the **Now playing** view.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Requirement: the playlist must be open. See ⇨ *page 161*.

– **Selecting a track**: select the track that is currently playing. Select: right control button > **Copy to Jukebox** > **This track** or **Entire album** or **This artist**.

Requirement: a video file must be playing.

– Select: right control button > **Copy to Jukebox**.

The copying process begins. The status of the copying process is shown in the MMI.

– **Hiding the importing process**: select and confirm **Continue copying in background**. The importing process is hidden.
– **Canceling the importing process**: select and confirm **Cancel copying**: **Or**: remove the source that is being imported. Files already copied remain.

When importing, the audio files are automatically sorted into the media center categories based on the stored additional information ⇨ *page 160*. The copied video files are stored in the media center under the **Videos** category.

Note

Do not import audio/video files when the engine is turned off because this will drain the vehicle battery.

Tips

– Tracks from audio CDs cannot be imported to the Jukebox for legal reasons.
– Files that have already been imported are automatically recognized and cannot be copied to the Jukebox again.
– It is not possible to play audio/video* files in the CD/DVD* drive while importing them.
– The Jukebox does not provide an export function due to legal reasons.
– Files or tracks without stored additional information are listed as **Unknown**. Audi recommends adding additional information (such as ID3 tags) to audio files.
– Reset the Jukebox to the factory default settings when selling your vehicle ⇨ *page 166*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth

With the Bluetooth audio player, you can play music wirelessly from your Bluetooth-capable device (such as a cell phone) through the MMI.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the Bluetooth function on your Bluetooth device and the **Bluetooth audio player** ⇨ *page 168* in the MMI must both be switched on.

– **Connecting** a **Bluetooth device**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed. Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player** ⑥ ⇨ *page 159, fig. 135*.
– If necessary, select and confirm, **Not connected** > **Connect Bluetooth audio player**. The Bluetooth device search starts. Follow the instructions in the MMI.
– Select and confirm the desired Bluetooth device from the list. The MMI generates a PIN for the connection.
– Select and confirm **Yes**.
– Enter the PIN for connecting on your Bluetooth device. **Or**: if the PIN is already displayed on your Bluetooth device, confirm it in the Bluetooth device and in the MMI. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

The media is started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used.

Tips

– Check for any connection requests on your Bluetooth device.
– You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when they are within range.
– Multiple Bluetooth audio players can be connected to the MMI, but only one mobile device can be active.
– Bluetooth protocols AVRCP (1.0/1.3/1.4) and A2DP are supported. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Note the volume setting on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting your mobile device to the maximum volume when using it as a Bluetooth audio player.
– The supported media functions (such as shuffle) depend on the Bluetooth device being used.
– For more information on the supported devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact your authorized Audi dealer.

Wi-Fi audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi

Using the Wi-Fi audio player media source on the MMI, you can connect and operate your Wi-Fi capable media player (such as a smartphone) to wirelessly play music from your media player library. The media player is connected to the MMI through the Wi-Fi hotspot. An UPnP Server app or an integrated UPnP/DLNA server on your media player is required to access your media player library. The Audi MMI connect app also offers access to Internet radio.*

Requirement: the Wi-Fi function on your media player must be switched on. The **Audi MMI connect** app or an UPnP server app is installed on your media player or your media player has an integrated UPnP/DLNA server.

– **Connecting a media player**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 159* is displayed. Select and confirm **Wi-Fi audio player** ⑧ ⇨ *page 159, fig. 135*.
– If necessary, select and confirm **Wi-Fi turned off** > **Turn on Wi-Fi** to activate Wi-Fi in the MMI. Select **Wi-Fi settings**, if necessary. Select the same settings on the wireless media player that are used for the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– **Starting** the **Wi-Fi audio player**: start the **Audi MMI connect** app or a UPnP server app, or set media permissions on your media player. The first song in the media center on your media player will begin playing.
– **Operating the media player**: the media player is operated through the MMI.
– **Starting Online radio**[1]: press the left control button repeatedly until the **Folders** menu item appears. Select and confirm **Folders** > **Online radio**. Select and confirm a station from one of the folders shown.

WARNING

– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– It is only safe to use laptops and similar mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read and follow the warnings on ⇨ *page 192, Front airbags*.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

– The Wi-Fi audio player only needs to be paired one time to the MMI using the Wi-Fi hotspot. Depending on the media player being used, a device that was already paired will connect automatically with the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot when it is within range.
– The Wi-Fi connection is reconfigured when inserting or removing the SIM card in the SIM card reader*. There may be a temporary interruption in audio playback, depending on the media player.
– Also note the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 128, About Audi connect*. ▶

[1] Only available with the **Audi MMI connect** app.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Please note that a Wi-Fi connection does not automatically make it possible to use the Internet. For additional information, refer to ⇨ *page 121*.
– To avoid interruptions during playback, deactivate the power saving function on the media player or connect it to a charger.
– The loading times for the audio data depend on the media player used and the number of files that it contains.
– A maximum of 2,000 entries per directory are displayed in the MMI.
– Contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information on the Wi-Fi audio player.

Online media

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

You can playback and operate different online media services using the MMI.

▸ Press: the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 159, fig. 135* is displayed.

Requirement:

– The **Audi MMI connect** app must be installed and open on your mobile device.
– You must be logged into your myAudi account in the **Audi MMI connect** app and you must have selected your vehicle.
– The Wi-Fi function on the mobile device and on the MMI must be switched on.
– A network connection in the MMI must be established ⇨ *page 127*.
– The **Online media*** source ⑨ ⇨ *page 159, fig. 135* must be displayed in the MMI.
– A supported online media service must be available in your country.
– You must have an account with a supported online media service.
– Depending on the online media service, you must install and open an app on your mobile device.

Starting online media:

Press: the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 159* is displayed.

Select and confirm an online media service.

Connect new device:

Switch on the Wi-Fi function on your mobile device. Select in the connection manager ⇨ *page 167* **MMI connect App** > *the desired mobile device*. If the desired device is not displayed, select and confirm **Connect new device** in the connection manager.

WARNING

– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read and follow the warnings on ⇨ *page 192, Front airbags*.

Note

Please note that there generally are additional costs when using an online media service account, especially when it is used internationally.

Tips

– Mobile devices only need to be paired one time to the MMI using the Wi-Fi hotspot. Depending on the mobile device being used, a device that was already paired will connect automatically with the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot when it is within range.
– Depending on the Internet connection, a connection loss can occur during playback of online media services.
– **Online media** usage depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
– Audi AG simply makes the access to online media services possible through the MMI ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and does not take any responsibility for the contents of the online media services.
– Also note the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 128, About Audi connect*.
– Depending on the mobile device being used, interruptions in the media playback can occur. To avoid interruptions when using a mobile device, do not lock the screen on your mobile device and keep the **Audi MMI connect** app in the foreground.
– Contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information about online media.

Multimedia connections

USB adapter for Audi music interface or USB charging port

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can connect your mobile devices (such as a smartphone or MP3 player) to the Audi music interface or a USB charging port using a special USB adapter.

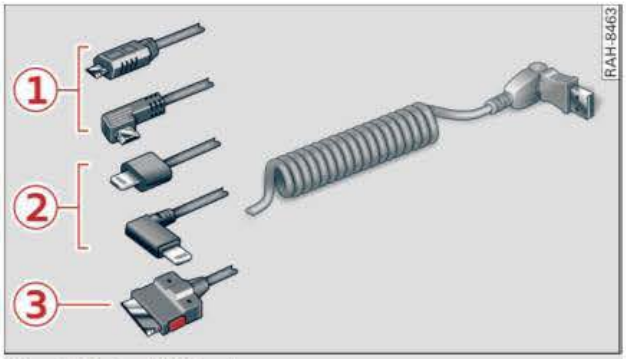


Fig. 132 Audi USB adapters

① USB adapter for devices with a micro USB connection

② USB adapter for devices with an Apple Lightning connection

③ USB adapter for devices with an Apple Dock connector

You can purchase the USB adapter from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores.

Use the USB adapter for the **Audi music interface** ⇨ *page 155*.

Note

Handle the USB adapter carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.

Audi music interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface

Connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface to be able to operate it through the MMI and charge the battery.



Fig. 133 Connecting mobile devices

The Audi music interface is located in the front storage compartment in the center console ㉓ ⇨ *page 6, fig. 2*.

– **Connecting a mobile device using a USB adapter**: connect the applicable USB adapter* ② ⇨ *fig. 133* to the port on the Audi music interface ③ and then connect the adapter to the mobile device ① (such as an iPod).
– **Charging a mobile device using a USB adapter**: when you connect a mobile device to the Audi music interface ③ using the applicable USB adapter* ② ⇨ *fig. 133*, the battery will automatically charge.
– **Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface**: remove the USB adapter ② ⇨ *fig. 133* from the Audi music interface.
– **Disconnecting mobile devices with an Apple Dock connector***: remove the Apple Dock connector from the Apple device with the release tabs ③ pressed in ⇨ *page 155, fig. 132*.

The media are started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used ⇨ *page 159*.

Connecting two mobile devices: if two mobile devices (for example iPod and smartphone) are ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

connected at the same time, then both devices can be used as playback sources.

You can connect mobile devices using the analog **AUX** port.

- **Connecting a mobile device to the AUX input**: connect the cable (5) ⇨ *fig. 133* to the AUX input (6) on the Audi music interface and then to the mobile device (4) (such as an MP3 player or smartphone).
- **Disconnecting a mobile device from the AUX input**: remove the cable (5) ⇨ *fig. 133* from the Audi music interface.
- **Operation**: select and confirm the **External audio player** source (6) ⇨ *page 159, fig. 135*. The media are started and operated through the mobile device (4) ⇨ *fig. 133*.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

- Remove the connector from the Audi music interface carefully so it is not damaged.
- Use a USB extension cable to connect devices that have an integrated USB connector (such as a USB stick) to prevent damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
- Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

- Do not use an additional adapter or USB extension cable to connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface that already have a cable or that must be connected with a USB adapter (⇨ *page 155*). They may impair the functionality.
- You can purchase the AUX connector cable from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores.
- Functionality is not guaranteed for mobile devices that do not meet the USB 2.0 specification.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Some iPod versions, such as the iPod shuffle, cannot be connected to the USB adapter for devices with Apple Dock connector*. Connect these devices using a AUX connector cable.
- Video playback through the Audi music interface is only supported if the connected device is recognized as a USB storage device (for example a USB stick). Apple devices and MTP devices (such as smartphones) are not recognized as USB storage devices.
- iPod/iPhone/iPad malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. Reset your iPod/iPhone/iPad if this happens.
- For important information on operating your iPod/iPhone/iPad, refer to the user guide for that device. Audi recommends updating the iPod/iPhone/iPad software to the latest version.
- For more information about the Audi music interface and supported devices, check the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Supported media and file formats

Overview

The following audio/video files are supported by the DVD drive, Jukebox, SD card reader and the connection for USB storage devices.

	Audio files				Video files*			
Supported media	**SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity up to 128 GB **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 min.) with CD text (artist, album, song)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; DVD video; DVD audio with audio tracks that are compatible with a DVD video player **Audi music interface**: mobile devices ⇨ *page 155* such as iPods and MTP players, USB storage devices in "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" that conform to USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (Plug-and-Play capable), external USB flash drives and hard drives							
File system	**Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage devices**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device partitions**: 2 per USB connection **CD/DVD file systems:** ISO9660, Joliet, UDF							
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium or from Gracenote is displayed, depending on availability.							
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer-3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	FLAC	MPEG-1/-2	ISO-MPEG4; DivX 4 and 5; Xvid	ISO-MPEG4 H. 264 (MPEG4 AVC)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac	.mpg; .mpeg	.avi	.mp4; .m4v; .mov	.wmv; .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX							
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies			48 kHz sampling frequency	up to maximum 2,000 kbit/s and 720x576 px. at maximum 25fps			
Number of files	**DVD drive***: max. 1,000 files per medium **Jukebox***: approximately 10 GB memory capacity; max. 3,000 files can be imported **USB storage devices and memory cards**: max. 10000 files per medium; max. 1000 files per playlist/directory							

Tips

- The media drives do not support the Windows Media Audio 9 Voice format.
- For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.
- Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) display differently depending on the system language and cannot always be guaranteed.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its "USB Device Subclass".

– Some MTP player functions are not supported, such as rating music tracks and video playback.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a CD drive

The following audio file properties are supported by the CD drive:

	Audio files			
Supported media	Audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB			
File system	**CD file system:** ISO9660, Joliet, UDF			
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium may be displayed, depending on availability.			
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer-3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	FLAC
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX			
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies			48 kHz sampling frequency
Number of files	Maximum 1,000 files per medium			

Tips

– For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.

– Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) display differently depending on the system language and cannot always be guaranteed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing media

Accessing media

You can start and operate various media through the MMI control panel.



Fig. 134 Possible sources in the Media menu



Fig. 135 Possible sources in the Media menu

Requirement: a media source must contain audio/video* files ⇨ *page 150*.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sources may be displayed in the **Media** menu:

① **Jukebox*** ⇨ *page 151*

② **DVD drive*/CD drive*** ⇨ *page 150* / ⇨ *page 151*

③ **SD card reader** ⇨ *page 150*

④ **Audi music interface* / External audio player** ⇨ *page 155*

such as iPod, USB stick

⑥ **Bluetooth audio player*** ⇨ *page 152*

⑦ **Wi-Fi audio player*** ⇨ *page 153*

⑧ **Online media*** ⇨ *page 154*

– **Selecting a source**: select and confirm the desired source. **Or**: press the MEDIA button repeatedly until the desired source is selected.
– **Change to radio**: the Radio menu opens ⇨ *page 145*.
– **Playing audio/video files**: select a source in the **Media** menu > *Category* (such as artists > *album* > *track*).
– **Moving one level up in the folder structure**: press the BACK button. **Or**: select and confirm **Folder up**.
– **Selecting the previous or next track/chapter**[1]: move the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel to the left ⏮ or right ⏭.
– **Rewinding/fast forwarding audio/video files**: move the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel to the left ⏮ or right ⏭ until the desired playback position is reached.
– **Pausing or resuming playback**: press the On/Off knob briefly.

Tips

– You can scroll through long lists of folders or tracks quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of folders or tracks.
– The video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary for safety reasons. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.

[1] Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Media center

Various categories for selecting audio/video files are available in the media center.*



Fig. 136 Example: USB stick categories

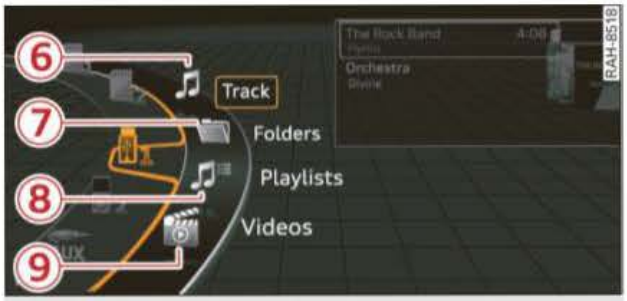


Fig. 137 Example: USB stick categories

▸ Press: the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed. Select and confirm the desired source.

① Active source

The active source is highlighted. Depending on the connected device or Online media service*, the active source symbol ① may change. As an example, a USB stick is shown ⇨ *fig. 136* connected to the Audi music interface*.

Depending on the active source, you can select audio/video* files from the following categories and add them to the playlist:

② Favorites

The **Favorites** category appears if at least one entry is stored in the favorites list. See ⇨ *page 161, Favorites*.

③ Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select and confirm an artist, an album and then a track.

④ Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select and confirm an album and then a track.

⑤ Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select and confirm a genre (such as **Pop**), an artist, an album and then a song.

⑥ Tracks

All available songs are displayed. Select and confirm a track.

⑦ Folders

The folder structure or track/chapter list is displayed. Select a folder, if necessary. Select and confirm a track.

⑧ Playlists

All available playlists from the source and the smart playlists are displayed. Select and confirm a playlist and then a track.

Smart playlists:

- **Last played tracks**: the last track played in the selected source is displayed.
- **Most played tracks**: the most played tracks in the selected source are displayed.
- **5 stars** to **1 star**: tracks from the selected source are displayed according to their rating.
- **Unrated**: all files from the selected source without rating information (for example, in the ID3 tag) are displayed.

⑨ Videos*

All available video files are displayed. Select and confirm a video file.

Tips

- Only the categories supported by the medium are available. For example, CD/DVD-ROM tracks cannot be selected with categories such as **Artists**, **Albums** or **Genres**. With an iPod (source: Audi music interface ⇨ *page 155*), the **Podcasts**, **Audio books** and **Composers** categories are also available. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary for safety reasons. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
– When synchronizing a portable device with "Cloud" services, playlists may display incorrectly in the MMI. Use the media center in the device.

Free text search

You can search in the active source by tracks and video files, for example*



Fig. 138 Input field and results list for free text search

You can open the **free text search** depending on the selected source.

Requirement: the playlist ⇨ *page 161* or media center ⇨ *page 160* must be displayed.

Opening free text search

▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① appears. **Or**: push the control knob up.

Using the free text search: ⇨ *page 102, Free text search*.

Entries that contain the entered search term are listed in the results list ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 138*. You can search for artists ② ⇨ *fig. 138*, albums ③ or tracks ④, genres and videos.

Tips

– It will then search through the files in the active source.
– If the free text search was opened in the **Folders** ⑦ category ⇨ *page 160, fig. 137* or in the **Composers**, **Podcasts** and **Audio books** category, then it will only search through files in that folder.

Playlist



Fig. 139 Playlist

The track, artist, album and album cover, if applicable, will appear in the playlist.

Options

See ⇨ *page 162, Additional settings*.

Favorites

You can store up to 50 entries for each source in the favorites list.

Requirement: the playlist or media center must be open.
– Select the desired entry from the playlist or media center.
– Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**. **Or**: hold down the control knob for several seconds.

When you store a track as a favorite, the associated album will appear in the favorites list as an entry.

Requirement: at least one entry must be stored in the favorites list.

Displaying the favorites list: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 159* is displayed. Select the source that contains the *categories* ⇨ *page 160* (for example, SD card). Select the **Favorites** *category*.

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.
– **Listening to a favorite**: select and confirm an entry from the favorites list. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **Move favorite**: select the desired entry from the favorites list. Select the right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the desired presets location.
– **Deleting a favorite**: select the desired entry from the favorites list. Select the right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

Additional settings

Options menu

Context-specific functions and settings are available depending on the selected source.

▸ Press the right control button.

Sound settings

See ⇨ *page 169*.

Input level

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the AUX connection cable* or to a USB adapter*.

The volume of the mobile device is adapted to the MMI. Audi recommends adjusting the volume on the mobile device to 70% of the maximum volume output.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 168*.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 167*.

Additional track information

When the function is switched on ☑ and a playlist is open, various information about the current track (such as artist, album, album cover*) as well as the elapsed playing time and the remaining playing time are displayed.

Jukebox memory capacity

Information on the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks in the Jukebox is displayed.

Change playing position

Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. **Or**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from left to right.

Shuffle[1)]

With the function switched on ☑, all files in the playlist are played and shown in random order.

Repeat track[1)]

When the function is switched on ☑, the current track repeats.

Back to "Now playing"

The options menu is closed. The track being currently played appears in the playlist.

Play similar music*

The track being played is quickly analyzed (such as artists, genres, mood, beat) and a smart playlist with similar tracks is shown.

Play more...

A smart playlist is shown based on the track being played. You can select between a playlist with more tracks **by this artist**, **from this album** or **of this genre**.

Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

Depending on availability, various information will load about the track being currently played when this function is switched on ☑.

Copy to jukebox

See ⇨ *page 151, Adding to the Jukebox*.

Favorites

See ⇨ *page 161*. ▶

1) The function automatically switches off when the source is changed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional options

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and a video file* or a DVD* must be playing.

Parental control*

Playback of video DVDs can be restricted using parental control.

Enter the password for parental control. Password set at the factory: **1234**. You have the following options:

– **Protection level**: select and confirm the protection level (for example, Level 5). Eight different protection levels can be set for parental control. If you set the parental control level at Level 5, all DVDs from level 1-5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play. Select **No restriction** to remove all of the restrictions.
– **Change password**: edit the current password.

Switch to full screen

The video image is displayed. Turn the control knob to display the playlist. **Or**: press the BACK button.

Replay video

When this function is switched on ☑, the current video will replay.

Show DVD menu

The DVD main menu is opened in the Infotainment system display. To select a menu item, move your finger on the MMI touch control pad and press the control knob.

Audio track[1)]

You can manually set the audio track (language and audio format). The language and audio format options depend on the video DVD.

Subtitles[1)]

You can set subtitles for playback manually. The languages available depend on the DVD.

Picture format

Audi recommends the **Automatic** setting for the picture format. You can set the picture format depending on the active file or source (for example Video file*, DVD*).

Picture format	Information
automatic	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the image in the optimum ratio. Black bars may appear on the sides of the display, depending on the source format and the Infotainment system display that is installed.
Zoom	The image is enlarged to fill the entire Infotainment system display. Switch the function off if the image is distorted.
Cinemascope	Use this setting for films in the cinema format 21:9. Black bars are shown in the upper and lower edges of the Infotainment system display.
Original	The image is displayed in the ratio of the source format. Select this option if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off when **Auto** is selected.
4:3	The image is fixed in the 4:3 picture format. Black bars are shown on the sides of the Infotainment system display.
16:9	The image is fixed in the 16:9 picture format. Black bars are shown in the upper and lower edges of the Infotainment system display.

Tips

– Not all video DVDs have parental control. ▶

1) Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The security levels for the **Parental control** are based on the US standards from the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Note that the age levels for video DVDs in European countries may differ.

– Password entry for **Parental control** will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect password three times in a row. The password can only be reset by an authorized Audi dealer.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface*/Bluetooth audio player*: mobile device is not supported.	Refer to the information on the **Audi music interface*** ⇨ *page 155*/**Bluetooth audio player*** ⇨ *page 152*. You can learn about supported mobile devices in the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audisua.com/bluetooth.
Audi music interface*: the volume is too high/too low when starting playback through the AUX input.	Adjust the volume of the mobile device to approximately 70% of the maximum output ⇨ *page 162,* **Input level**.
Audi music interface*: the portable device is not recognized as a source.	For many cell phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible when the battery level is too low (less than 5% of its capacity). The mobile device will only be recognized as a source in the MMI after connecting if the battery charge is sufficient.
Audi music interface*: malfunctions during audio playback through an iPod/iPhone/iPad.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch this function off ⇨ *page 168* when you are not using the **Bluetooth audio player**.
AUX input: there is static when connecting and disconnecting the AUX connection cable.	When connecting and disconnecting, the **External audio player** source is already selected. Before connecting or disconnecting the mobile device, either mute the device (see ⇨ *page 169*) or switch to a different audio source (for example ⇨ *page 145, Accessing the radio*).
Bluetooth audio player*/Wi-Fi audio player*: audio playback interference.	Only *one* interface should be actively used at a time to ensure problem-free playback.
Wi-Fi audio player*: audio playback interference.	Audio playback interference can occur on some cell phones if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established through the SIM card reader* on the MMI control panel and the **mobile data** option on the cell phone is switched on. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your cell phone.
Jukebox*: tracks on the imported playlist are grayed out.	When importing playlists, all of the files themselves must be imported.
Jukebox*: imported tracks cannot be played or found.	If you cannot find imported tracks in the media center, they may not be supported. Only copy supported files ⇨ *page 157* to the Jukebox.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Problem	Solution
Wi-Fi audio player*: multiple devices are connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot. A media player (such as a smartphone) appears as the source and cannot be changed.	Close the **Audi MMI connect** app on the connected devices (for example, smartphones) that are not being used as the Wi-Fi audio player*. Likewise, close the UPnP server apps or the media permissions on the integrated UPnP/DLNA server. Connect the desired device as a Wi-Fi audio player* ⇨ *page 153*.
Wi-Fi audio player*: audio playback interference.	Audio playback interference can occur on some cell phones if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established through the SIM card reader* on the MMI control panel and the **mobile data** option on the cell phone is switched on. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your cell phone.
Online media*: connection failed between the MMI and the **Audi MMI connect** app.	To establish a connection to the MMI, the MMI connection switch must be switched on in the **Audi MMI connect** status screen.
Wi-Fi audio player*/Online media*: audio playback interference.	Interference can occur during audio playback if the **Hotspot and client** Wi-Fi mode setting ⇨ *page 126* was selected and your personal hotspot is not available. For playback without interference, Audi recommends the **Hotspot** setting for **Wi-Fi mode**.
Bluetooth audio player*: interference with track display and audio playback.	Playback interference can occur when using the **Bluetooth audio player** if a music player app from a third party provider is open. Audi recommends using the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (such as a smartphone).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

System settings

Setting the date and time

You can set the clock time manually or using the GPS.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Date & time**.

Automatic setting

When this function is switched on ☑, the time and date are automatically adjusted.

Time

The **Time** can be set manually. The **Automatic setting** must be switched off to do this.

Date

The **Date** can be set manually. The **Automatic setting** must be switched off to do this.

Time zone

When selecting the appropriate time zone, a sampling of countries in this zone will be listed.

Automatic time zone*

When the automatic time zone function is switched on, the time will automatically adjust to the corresponding time zone.

Time format

If you select **24h**, the clock will display, for example, **13:00**. If you select **AM/PM**, the clock will display, for example, **1:00 PM**.

Date format

If you select **DD.MM.YYYY**, the date will display, for example, **31.12.2015**. If you select **MM/DD/YYYY**, the date will display, for example, **12/31/2015**. If you select **YYYY-MM-DD**, the date display will display, for example, **2015-12-31**.

MMI settings

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings**.

Language

The display language as well as the language for Voice guidance* and the voice recognition system* can be changed.

The number of languages available depends on the market.

Units of measurement

The following units can be selected:

– **Speed** (mph or km/h)
– **Distance** (miles or kilometers)
– **Temperature** (°F or °C)
– **Fuel consumption** (l/100km, mpg (US), mpg (UK) or km/l)
– **Volume** (liters, gallons)

Operating tips

When the function is switched on ☑, your MMI shows you operating tips for input. The frequency of how often it displays decreases with time. You can switch off the operating tips at any time.

Voice recognition*

Command display: the display of possible commands during voice input can be switched on or off.

Short dialog: prompts in a shorter format can be switched on or off.

Speech dialog system volume: you can adjust the volume of the announcements by turning the control knob.

Individual speech training (only when the vehicle is stationary): you can adapt the voice recognition system to your voice or pronunciation in order to improve the system's ability to recognize your speech. Individual training is comprised of 20 speech entries that consist of commands and sequences of numbers. You can delete the programmed voice training with the **Reset individual speech training** function.

Factory default settings

The following functions can be reset to the factory default settings:

– **Sound settings** ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- **Radio**
- **Media settings**
- **Jukebox***
- **Directory***
- **Telephone***
- **Bluetooth and Wi-Fi***
- **Navigation settings***
- **Navigation and online memory***
- **Voice recognition***
- **Message settings***
- **Apps***
- **Operating tips**
- **Audi connect***

You can select the desired functions individually or all at once with the **Select all entries** option. Select and confirm **Restore factory settings**.

Tips

Make sure that not only the settings were deleted but also the stored data, if applicable.

Connection manager

Introduction

The connection manager gives you an overview of your connected devices and their network status.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager**.

If a mobile device was already connected, the name of the device and the connection mode will display under the corresponding menu item.

Using the telephone

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone.

Data connection

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a mobile device (such as a smartphone).
- **List of devices already connected**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already connected. **Or**: insert a mini SIM card into the SIM card reader ⇨ *page 121*.

MMI connect app

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect

Requirement: the **Audi MMI connect** app must be installed and open on your mobile device.

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a mobile device (such as a smartphone).
- **List of devices already connected**: select your mobile device from the list of all the devices that are already connected.

Music

Applies to vehicles with Bluetooth or Wi-Fi audio player

Audio player*

Requirement: the Bluetooth function and visibility on the MMI ⇨ *page 168* and cell phone must be switched on.

- **Connect new device**: press the control knob. Select **Bluetooth audio player**. Search for and connect a new device.
- **List of devices already connected**: select a Bluetooth device from the list of all the devices that are already connected.

Wi-Fi audio player*

Requirement: the Wi-Fi hotspot on the MMI ⇨ *page 126* and the Wi-Fi on your cell phone must be switched on.

- **Connect new device**: press the control knob. Search for and connect a Wi-Fi capable device.
- **Disconnect Wi-Fi audio player**: deactivate the Wi-Fi on your Wi-Fi capable device. The device will be automatically removed from the list.

Directory

Requirement: cell phones must not be connected to the MMI through the Bluetooth remote SIM access profile or through the **Handsfree** profile.

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a new cell phone. **Or**: insert a mini SIM card into the SIM card reader ⇨ *page 121*. ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **List of devices already connected**: select your cell phone from the list of all the cell phones that are already connected.

Additional options

Depending on the selected function, you can use the right control button to access the available additional options in the connection manager.

Bluetooth settings

– **Bluetooth**: when the function is switched on ☑, the Bluetooth symbol appears in the Infotainment system display. The MMI visibility for Bluetooth devices can be turned on or off using the **Visible/Invisible** settings. However, it is still possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with paired devices when the visibility is switched off. **Bluetooth** should be switched to **Invisible** when the pairing process is complete so that the MMI is not visible to others. **Bluetooth** can be switched off. Then a Bluetooth connection is not possible.
– **Delete Bluetooth device**: the selected cell phone/mobile device is disconnected from the MMI.
– **Show Bluetooth profiles**: you can individually **Connect** or **Disconnect** the **Handsfree**, **Car phone** and **Directory/contacts** profiles.
– **Bluetooth audio player**: switch this function on ☑ to select the Bluetooth audio player as a source in the Media menu.
– **Bluetooth name**: the MMI Bluetooth name (for example „AUDI MMI 2613“) is displayed and can be changed.

Online settings*

– **Data connection settings**: see ⇨ *page 127, Configuring the data connection*
– **Data usage counter**: the amount of data packets that are sent and received through the MMI is displayed. You can reset the data usage information to zero using the **Reset data counter** option.
– **Network status**: the mobile network provider for data service as well as the network status are displayed.

Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 126, Wi-Fi Hotspot*.

SIM PIN settings*

– **Automatic PIN entry**: when this function is switched on ☑, the SIM PIN is automatically saved in the MMI after it is entered for the first time. The SIM PIN for four different SIM cards can be saved in the MMI. With the function switched off, the currently stored SIM PIN is deleted from the MMI. When the automatic PIN entry is switched on, there are no SIM PIN prompts.
– **Disable PIN query**: when switched on, there are no SIM PIN queries. The automatic PIN entry is not used in this case.
– **Change PIN**: you can change the PIN on your SIM card. First enter the current SIM PIN. The SIM PIN can only contain digits 0-9. The new SIM PIN must be entered twice for security and then it will be saved to the SIM card.

Network settings*

– **Login**: you can chose an **automatic** login to your cell phone service provider's network, or you can choose a **manual** login from the list of available networks.
– **Network selection**: available networks in the present location can be selected under network selection. This function is only available for the **manual** login setting.

Tips

Some SIM cards do not allow the SIM PIN queries to be switched off.

System update

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance**.

– **System update**: slide the storage device with the update data into the appropriate drive ⇨ *page 150*. Select and confirm the drive > **Start update**. The duration of the process depends on the size of the update. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **Reset driver installation**: the selected media driver package is reset to the settings at the time of delivery.
– **Version information**: information on the MMI software version and the navigation database* software version is displayed. The **Software information** function also provides information on the software contained in the MMI and the licensing agreement.

Sound settings

The sound distribution and volume of the MMI can be adjusted individually. The settings depend on vehicle equipment.



Fig. 140 Adjusting the balance/fader

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button > **Entertainment**.

Treble / Bass

You can adjust the **Treble** and **Bass** settings by turning the control knob. The changed settings only apply for the audio source that is active at the time. This allows you to adjust the sound settings for each audio source separately.

Balance/Fader (sound focus)

– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the left or right**: press the control knob. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the front or rear**: press the control knob again. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution ratio with the MMI touch**: move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch control pad.

Speed-dependent volume

You can adjust how much the volume changes to compensate for noise inside the vehicle by turning the control knob.

Volume settings

Adjusting the volume

The volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) can be adjusted directly while the sound is playing using the On/Off knob.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the On/Off knob (2) ⇨ *page 95, fig. 90* to the right or left.
– **Muting or pausing**: press the On/Off knob briefly. **Or**: turn the On/Off knob to the left until the mute symbol appears. An active audio/video source is stopped.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: press the On/Off knob briefly. **Or**: turn the On/Off knob to the right.

Tips

Volumes that are too high or too low are automatically adjusted to a set level when the MMI is switched on.

Adjusting the system volume

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button.

Telephone

Mute telephone: messages and ringtones are set to mute.

Ringtone: ⇨ *page 119,* **Ringtone and volume settings**.

Ringtone volume: you can adjust the volume of the selected ringtone by turning the control knob.

Message volume: the volume of the notification for an incoming text message can be adjusted by turning the control knob. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Microphone sensitivity: the volume of a phone call can be adjusted during the phone call using the control knob.

Navigation

Voice guidance: ⇨ *page 138, Voice guidance*.

Voice guidance during phone call: ⇨ *page 138, Voice guidance*.

Voice guidance volume: the voice guidance volume can be adjusted during active route guidance by turning the control knob.

Entertainment fader: the volume of audio playback can be temporarily lowered when the parking system or voice guidance is active.

Voice recognition

Short dialog: prompts in a shorter format can be switched on or off.

Speech dialog system volume: you can adjust the volume of the announcements by turning the control knob.

Parking aid*

You can adjust the signal tone volume by turning the control knob.

– **Adjusting** the **Front volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.
– **Adjusting** the **Rear volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

MMI touch

The volume of the MMI touch voice prompts can be adjusted by turning the control knob.

Audi Heartbeat

You can adjust the Audi Heartbeat volume by turning the control knob.

Restarting the MMI (reset)

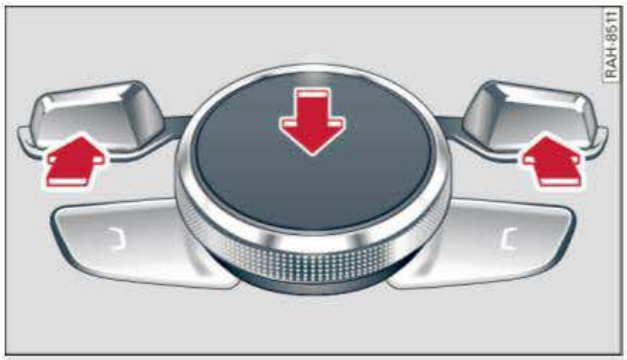


Fig. 141 Button combination to restart the system

▸ Briefly press the control knob and both rocker switches *at the same time* ⇨ *fig. 141*.

Notes on software licenses

You can find information about the software contained in the MMI and the license agreement in your MMI. Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **Version information**. **Or**: on the Internet at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safe driving

Basics

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
- Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
- Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

The following is a list of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts for driver and all passenger seating positions,
- safety belt pretensioners,
- safety belt force limiters for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- knee airbags for the front seats*
- side airbags in the front seats,
- side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features,
- special LATCH anchorages for child restraints,
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

Safety is everybody's responsibility!

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 176*, ⇨ *page 48*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 212, Child safety*.
- ▸ Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 44, Seats and storage*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 180*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Correct passenger seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

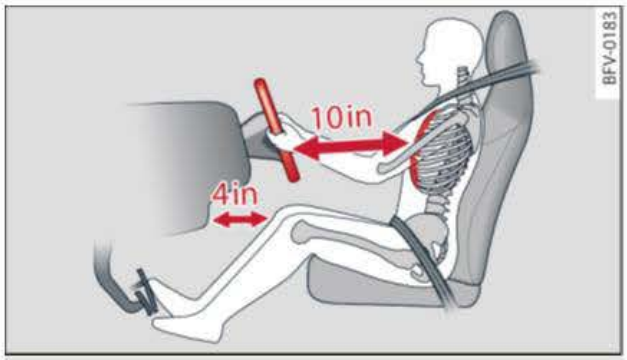


Fig. 142 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 142*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealership about adaptive equipment.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 184*.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 44, Seats and storage*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 4 in (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
- Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Before driving, always adjust the front seats properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
- Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
- Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 212*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 188*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 184*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 44*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
- Always make sure that there are at least 10 in (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
- Always make sure that there are at least 4 in (10 cm) between the front passenger's knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 212*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 188*.

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

- Make sure that the seatback is securely latched in the upright position ⇨ *page 50*.
- Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 184*.
- Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 212*.

⚠ WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– never stand up in the vehicle
– never stand on the seats
– never kneel on the seats
– never ride with the seatback reclined
– never lie down on the rear seat
– never lean up against the instrument panel
– never sit on the edge of the seat
– never sit sideways
– never lean out the window
– never put your feet out the window
– never put your feet on the instrument panel ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
– never ride in the footwell
– never ride in the cargo area

WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.
– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Driver and passenger side footwell

Important safety instructions

WARNING

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
– No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
– No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.
– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

▸ Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi Dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

- Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
- Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
- Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
- Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Stowing luggage

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

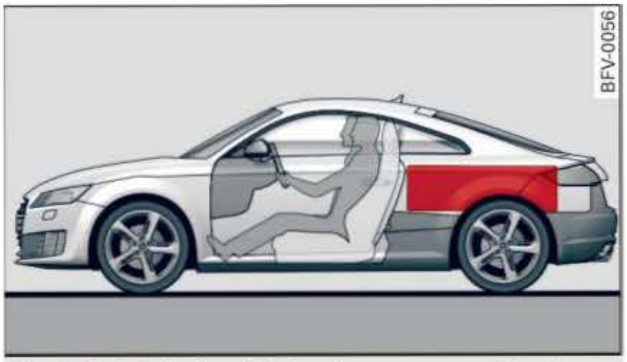


Fig. 143 Safe load positioning: heavy cargo positioned as far forward as possible.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible ⇨ *fig. 143* .
- Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇨ *page 177*.
- Make sure that the rear seatback is securely latched in place.

WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.

WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:

- Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  - Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Please observe information on safe driving ⇨ *page 171*.

WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

– Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  – Close all windows,
  – Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  – Switch off the air recirculation,
  – Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, all windows and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

– After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
– Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Tips

– Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel, on the left side of the luggage compartment. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.
– The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 261*.

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.



Fig. 144 Location of the tie-downs in the luggage compartment

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇨ *page 176, Loading the luggage compartment*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10 lbs (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

- Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
- When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.
- Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or 1-800-424-9393

or you may write to:

Administrator
NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Volkswagen Group Canada, Inc.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired: Tel.: 1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety belts

General notes

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

▸ Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.

Number of seats

Your Audi TT Coupe has two seating positions in the front and two height-limited seating positions in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt. The rear seat area in your Audi TT Coupe does not have enough room for passengers of all sizes. For reasons of safety, no person taller than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) should ever ride in the rear seat area.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.
– Persons taller than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) as well as children in booster seats who are too close to the rear window and roof can suffer severe head and neck injuries when the rear lid is closed or in a crash.
– The minimum clearance between the passenger's heads and the rear window must never - under any circumstances - be less that 1in (2.5 cm) when the passengers sit fully upright.
– Always make sure that rear seat passengers cannot be struck when the rear lid is closed.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger to remind you about the importance of buckling up.



Fig. 145 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

▸ Fasten your safety belt and make sure you wear it properly.
▸ Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
▸ Protect children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

WARNING

- Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
- Failure to pay attention to the warning light that comes on could lead to personal injury.

Why safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

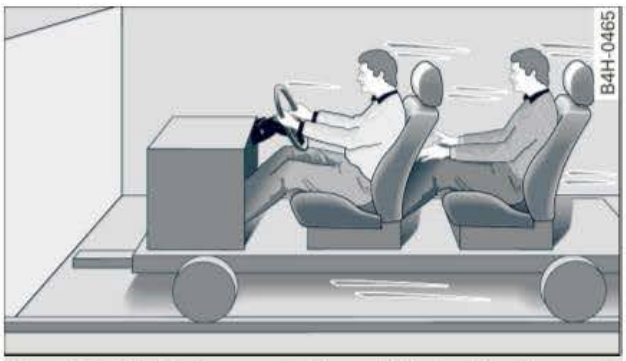


Fig. 146 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall



Fig. 147 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 146*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 147*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs, or 1,000 kg) or more. At higher speeds, these forces are even greater.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!



Fig. 148 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 149 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 148*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 149*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 150 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver.

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or “softly” through the “give” in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By “absorbing” the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more “tolerable” and less likely to cause injury. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- ▸ Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- ▸ Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- – Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- – For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- – Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- – Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- – Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- – Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- – Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- – Never wear belts twisted.
- – Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- – Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- – Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- – Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- – Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- – Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- – Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- – Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- – Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself. ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *table Internal cleaning on page 272*.

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Seat first - everybody buckle up!

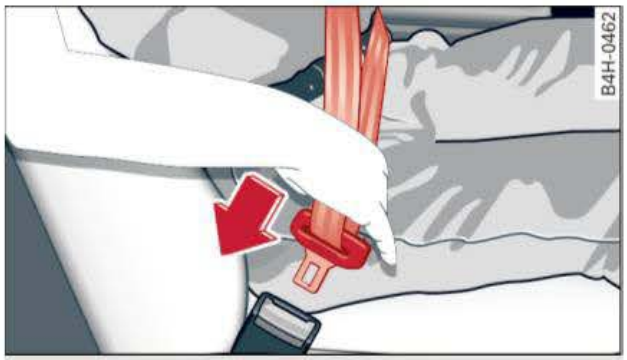


Fig. 151 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat properly ⇨ *page 44, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *fig. 151*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts on the front seats are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 15*.

Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 223*.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 185, Safety belt position*.

- – Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
- – Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.
- – Always make sure that the rear seat backrest is securely latched whenever the rear safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.
- – Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- – A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen. ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 225*.

Tips

For information on safety belt pretensioners, refer to ⇨ *page 186*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

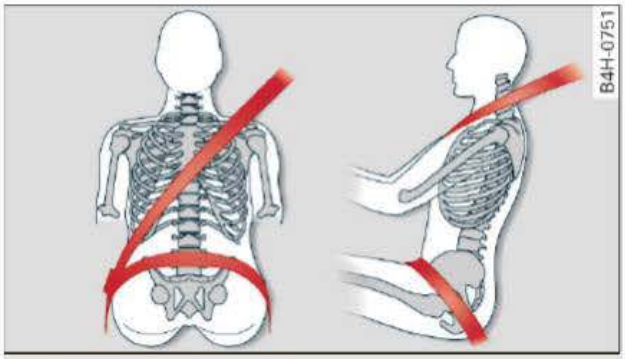


Fig. 152 Safety belt position

Use the height adjustment to change the position of the shoulder belt of the front safety belts.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit snugly ⇨ *fig. 152*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 183*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 153 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 185*.

- Adjust the front seat properly ⇨ *page 44, Seats and storage*.
- Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 153* ⇨ ⚠.
- Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *page 184, fig. 151*.
- Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 184*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

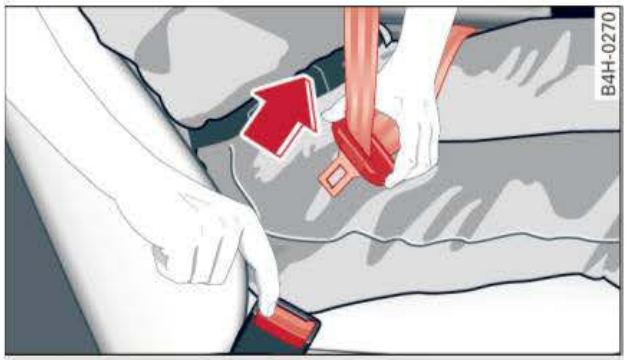


Fig. 154 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 154*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect seated position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seated position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- Always read and follow all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 183*.

Safety belt tensioner

How safety belt pretensioners work

In front, side and rear-end collisions above a particular severity and in a rollover, safety belts are tensioned automatically.

Pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts for the front seating positions are equipped with safety belt pretensioners. The system is activated by sensors in front, side and rear-end collisions of great severity and in a rollover. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack ⇨ ⚠ *in Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner on page 187*. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

⚠ WARNING

- It is possible for the pretensioners to deploy incorrectly.
- The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection for one collision. If the pyrotechnic pretensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced.

Tips

The pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners can only deploy once.

- The safety belt pretensioners do not deploy in minor frontal, side and rear-end collisions.
- A fine dust is released when the pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners deploy. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.
– Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Audi dealer perform this service for you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:
– The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbag system

Important information

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 172*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 44*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 183*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 212*.

In a collision airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 172, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 45*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 212*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

Since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in roll-overs.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 180*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 in (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 in (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to held you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 184, Safety belts*.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 172*.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▸ Be sure to read the important information and head the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 212*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the Requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Standard requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off ("suppressed") if a child up to about one year of age restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified has been installed on the front passenger seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 214*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the overhead console tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 214*.
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system ⇨ *page 199, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇨ *page 214*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the overhead console and stays on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 200, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 212, Child safety*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 199, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
- Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 155 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel



Fig. 156 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The safety belts for the front seats have "pretensioners" that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 155* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 156*. The general location of the airbags is marked "AIRBAG".

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.
- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
- Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9:00 o'clock and 3:00 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
- Always make sure nothing is in the front airbag deployment zone that could be struck by the airbag when it inflates.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Objects in the zone of a deploying airbag can become projectiles when the airbag deploys and cause serious personal injury.
– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors; never attach then to the doors or the windshield; never place them over or near or attach them to the area marked „AIRBAG“ on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the seat backrests; never place them between these areas and you or any other person in the vehicle.
– Never attach objects to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as accessory GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during breaking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.
– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the “low risk” option under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the typical one-year old child is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
– Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
– For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 214, Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system*.

"Suppression" requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 214*,
– When a person is detected on the front passenger seat, weighing more than the total weight of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total electrical capacitance on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 214*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the overhead console will come on and stay on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 199*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 188*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
– Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the capacitive passenger detection system, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system on the front passenger seat when the ignition is switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected ⇨ *page 200*. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

– Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
– An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit “decides” whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also “decides” whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A capacitive passenger detection system underneath the front passenger seat cover. This system measures the electrical capacitance of the person in the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 199*.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.

– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the overhead console ⇨ *page 200, fig. 158* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

⚠ WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.

– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
– Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
– Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
– Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
– Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. The capacitive passenger detection mat in the front passenger seat will not function properly if it is punctured.
– Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Such objects can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
– Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
– Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the capacitive passenger detection system from accurately measuring the capacitance of the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus keep the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket. Such devices can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

⚠ WARNING

If the front passenger seat gets wet, dry it immediately. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If liquid soaks into the front passenger seat, this can keep the airbag system from working properly and may, for instance, deactivate the passenger frontal airbag. If this happens, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on together with the airbag indicator light AIR BAG in the instrument cluster.
– If liquid is pooled on the seat, but has not soaked in, this may also keep the airbag system from working properly and cause the passenger frontal airbag to be enabled (turned on), even though there is a properly installed child restraint system on the seat. Wet towels or other wet things on the seat cushion can have the same effect. If the front passenger frontal airbag is turned on, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light light will go out.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger frontal airbag will be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front passenger frontal airbag will also be turned off if the capacitance measured by the system for the front passenger seat equals that of an infant of about one year of age in one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 200*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 188*.

More important things to know about front airbags

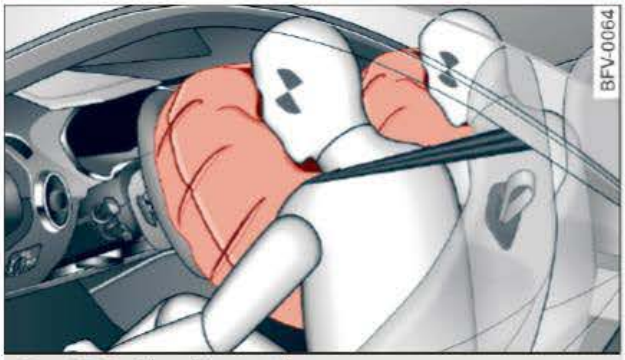


Fig. 157 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags supplement the three point safety belts only in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
- in side collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers,
- when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag will also not deploy:

- when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- when the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat indicates that the passenger side frontal airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light ⇨ *page 200* and how they work comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

- To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 189*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.
– Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Objects on the front passenger seat could cause the capacitive sensor in the seat to signal to airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact is not, or that the person on the seat is heavier than he or she actually is. The change in electric capacitance because of such objects can cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
– Never tilt the front passenger seat backrest forward when the vehicle is moving. An inflating airbag will force the backrest backward and can injure rear seat occupants.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.

– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

AIR BAG Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags and side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light AIR BAG will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light AIR BAG:

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will first start flashing to catch the driver's attention and then stay on continuously to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER** ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AIR BAG OFF light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 15* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light



Fig. 158 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the overhead console ⇨ *fig. 158*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. If the bulb for the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light burns out, the airbag indicator light AIR BAG will come on to signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out bulb will not change the way the front passenger's frontal airbag works, it will no longer be possible to use the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will blink for about 5 seconds when:

– the ignition is switched on and
– the capacitive passenger detection system, which switches the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

As soon as the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is proper for the age, size and electrical capacitance of the person occupying the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will show the status of the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag a few seconds after the ignition is switched on and the airbag indicator light goes off. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied;
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified; For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 214*.
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...
– a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
– and if the electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 189, Child restraints on the front seat - some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 212, Child safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light comes on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear on and does not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

- reactivate the system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;
- remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
- make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight.
- make sure that no electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) is placed or used on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket;
- make sure that no seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat;
- make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;
- make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light still does not come on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

- take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
- move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG light should NOT come on ...

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

- the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined,
- the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
- the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
- there are no aftermarket seat covers or cushions or other things (such as blankets) on the front passenger seat that might cause the capacitive passenger detection system to miscalculate electrical capacitance.

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

– If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 15* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or in a rearward-facing child safety seat, or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.
– Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
– Always install forward or rear-facing child seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

Tips

If the capacitive passenger detection system determines that the front passenger seat is empty, the frontal airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- The airbag system can deploy only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.
- For safety reasons in severe accidents, the alternator and starter are separated from the vehicle battery with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.
  - Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified technicians who have the experience, information and special tools necessary to perform the work safely.
  - If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
- Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

Knee airbags

Description of knee airbags

The knee airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 159 Driver's knee airbag

The driver knee airbag is in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 159*, the airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment.

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas and supplements the protection provided by the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met ⇨ *page 197, More important things to know about front airbags*.

In addition to their normal safety function, safety belts help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide supplemental protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 180, General notes*.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental knee airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising and minor abrasions and friction burns can also occur when an airbag inflates.

The knee airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
– The airbag indicator light in the overhead console

The knee airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in frontal collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
– in side collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers
– in the event of a system malfunction (warning/indicator light is on) ⇨ *page 15*.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 197*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 15* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How knee airbags work

The risk of injury to the leg area can be reduced by fully inflated knee airbags.

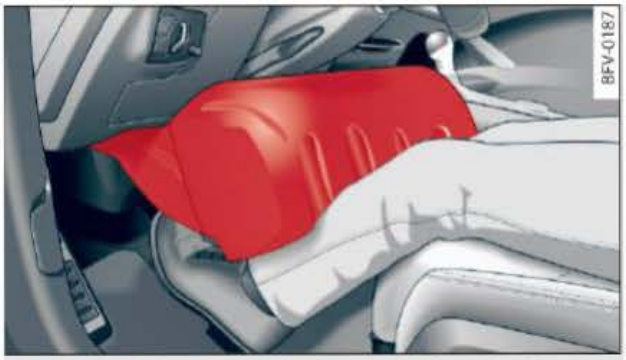


Fig. 160 Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger deploy in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met.

When the system deploys, the airbags fill with a propellant gas, and inflate between the lower part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇨ *page 197, fig. 157*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury.

Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.
– The knee airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- at least 10 in (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.
- at least 4 in (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.

– The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.
– Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
  – Never let anybody, especially children or animals ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
  – Never carry objects of any kind in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.
– Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.
– If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in a collision ⇨ *page 212, Child safety*.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

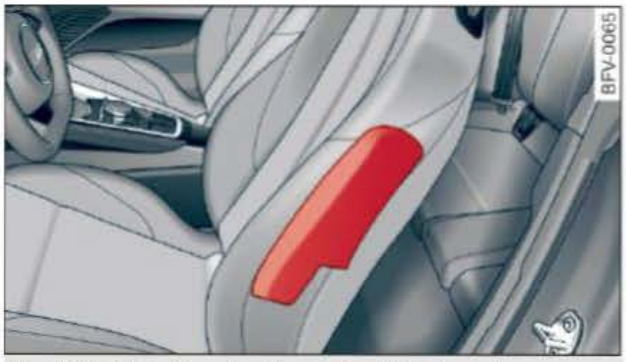


Fig. 161 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 161* facing the doors. They are identified by the word "AIRBAG".

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly. The side airbag for the front passenger seat can be used with properly installed child restraints. Please be sure to read the important information and warnings whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle: Safety belts ⇨ *page 180*, Airbag system ⇨ *page 188*, Child safety ⇨ *page 212*.

The side airbag system basically consists of:

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two side airbags located in the sides of the front backrests
– the airbag warning light in the overhead console.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics). ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's and front passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 208, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system.*

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 180, General notes.*

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

- when the ignition is switched off
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
- in front-end collisions
- in rear-end collisions
- in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

WARNING

- Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 208*.
- If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 15* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Fig. 162 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked "AIRBAG". It expands between the side trim panel and the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 212, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 162*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

⚠ WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  - Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  - Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
  - Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests.
  - Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
  - Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.
- Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
- Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 212, Child safety*.
– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
  – Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
  – Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
  – Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
  – Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
  – Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Side curtain airbags

Description of side curtain airbags

The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.



Fig. 163 Side curtain airbags, driver's side: side curtain airbag location

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 163*. They are identified by the word "AIRBAG" on the windshield frame and the center roof pillar.

The side curtain airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers.

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side curtain airbag will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 210, How side curtain airbags work*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 180, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags upon deployment. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:

- The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
- The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows with ejection mitigation features
- The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side curtain airbag is not activated:

- if the ignition is switched off,
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
- in rear-end collisions.

⚠ WARNING

- Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 44, Seats and storage*.
- If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 15* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How side curtain airbags work

Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Fig. 164 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 164*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 212*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can "cushion" the impact and in this way ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbag inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Audi sun shades.
- Never swing the sun visors over to the side windows if things such as pens, garage door openers, hands-free speakers, etc. are attached to the sun visors. They could come loose and cause serious injury if the side curtain airbag inflates.
- A deploying airbag inflates in a fraction of a second and with great force.
- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a side curtain airbag.
- The airbag deployment zones must be kept clear at all times. Make sure there are no objects, pets, or other persons in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors.

WARNING

- The airbag system can deploy only once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Child safety

Important information

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 182, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13 lbs (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 lbs (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 215, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  - Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  - Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
  - If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
  - Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
  - Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle ⇨ *page 180, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 188, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 212, Important information*.

Tips

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low-risk" requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The vehicle's Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat cushion that can detect the presence of a baby or a child in a child restraint system on this seat.

The capacitive passenger detection system registers the changes that result in an electrical field when a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket are on the front passenger seat. The change in the measured capacitance due to the presence of a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket on the front passenger seat is related to the child restraint system resting on the seat. The measured capacitance of a child restraint system varies depending on the type of system and specific make and model.

The electrical capacitance of the various types, makes, and models of child restraints specified by the U.S.National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in the relevant safety standard are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control unit together with the capacitances typical of infants and a 1-year old child. When a child restraint is used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system with the data stored in the electronic control unit.

Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child and child restraint are correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off, and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different "footprints", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 218*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 223*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward and sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 217*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  - When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  - Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  - Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
- Never allow children under 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) to wear a normal safety belt. However, the rear seat in the TT Coupe is designed to permit children who are between 4 ft 3 in (1.3 m) and 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall to use the available three-point lap and shoulder safety belts.
- Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
- Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  - Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  - The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.
  - The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  - Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
– Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 180, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 188, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 212, Child safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat



Fig. 165 Schematic overview: keep unused safety belts away from children in child safety seats. - outer rear safety belt,

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench, especially with LATCH universal lower anchorages, the unused safety belts **must** be secured so that the child in the child restraint cannot reach them ⇨ ⚠.

– Fasten the unused safety belt behind the child seat and let the belt retractor wind up the safety belt webbing.

WARNING

A child in a child safety seat installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt or a child in a booster seat on the rear seat could play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled. This could cause the child serious personal injury and even death.
– Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

as by fastening the unused safety belt behind the child seat and letting the belt retractor wind up the webbing.

Child seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.



Fig. 166 Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 223*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward and sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 217*.

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 166*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 189, Child restraints on the front seat - some important things to know*.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 180, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 188, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 212, Important information*.

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

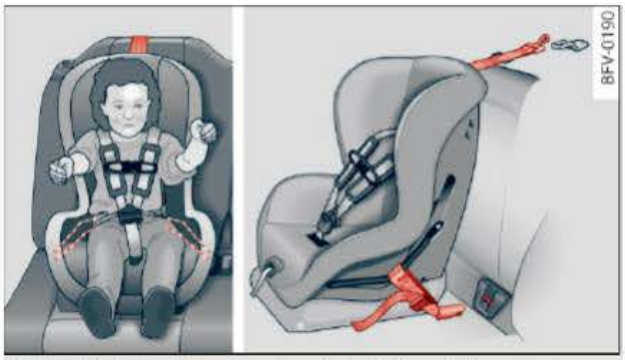


Fig. 167 Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat



Fig. 168 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 223* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 223*.
▸ If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇨ *page 228*.
▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 217*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) up to 40 lbs (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 167* and ⇨ *fig. 168*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.
– Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof. ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 180, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 188, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 212, Important information.*

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
– Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
– Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
– Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs and 80 lbs (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall.



Fig. 169 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall and weigh about 80 lbs (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 217*.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure that the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 180*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 199, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 180, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 188, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 212, Important information*.

Booster seats on the rear seat

Children who are about 7 years and older, who weigh more than 55 lbs (25 kg) and are not taller than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) are best protected when properly restrained on the rear seat.

Due to limited rear seat head clearance children 4 ft 3 in (51 in/1.30 m) and taller must not use booster seats on the rear seat of your Audi TT Coupe. The rear seat of your Audi TT Coupe has been specially designed to permit children who are between 4 ft 3 in (51 in/1.30 m) and 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall (about 7 to 12 years old) to use the available three -point lap and shoulder safety belts.

WARNING

- The rear seat area is too small to safely transport passengers taller than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m).
- Persons taller than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) as well as children in booster seats who are too close to the rear window and roof can suffer severe head and neck injuries when the rear lid is closed or in a crash.
- The minimum clearance between the passengers' heads and the rear window must never - under any circumstances - be less than 1in(2.5 cm.) when the passengers sits fully upright.
- Always make sure that the rear seat passengers cannot be struck when the rear lid is closed.

Booster seats on the front seat

Children aged about 7 years and older and weighing more than 55 lbs (25 kg) who are between 4 ft 3 in (51 in/1.30 m) and 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall may in exceptional circumstances ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ride on the front passenger's seat. Children less than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall must sit on a certified booster seat and properly wear the vehicle's three-point lap and shoulder safety belt.

Always securely latch the passenger seat at the very rear of its fore and aft adjustment range. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.

WARNING

If you must install a booster seat child restraint on the front passenger seat:

- Make sure the booster seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the booster seat.
- Always move the passenger seat to the very rear of its fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible.
- Always make sure that the passenger seat is securely latched in place before installing the booster seat. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- If the passenger seat cannot be securely latched in the very rear of its fore and aft adjustment range, then the passenger front airbag must be turned off with the ON / OFF switch.

Securing child seats

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest is securely latched whenever the rear safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint.
- If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 212*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 189, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:
– Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 199, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light signals the correct front passenger frontal airbag status.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:
– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

- Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
- Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
- Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
- You should hear a "clicking" noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
- Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward and sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm).

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.
- Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 212*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 189, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

- Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
- Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 212*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 189, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know.*

LATCH system (Lower anchorages and tethers for children)

Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

The combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the **LATCH** system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren." In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.
– Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
– Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
– Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
– Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
– Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

Tips

– In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.
– In other countries, the term "ISOFIX" is used to describe the lower anchorages.

Location

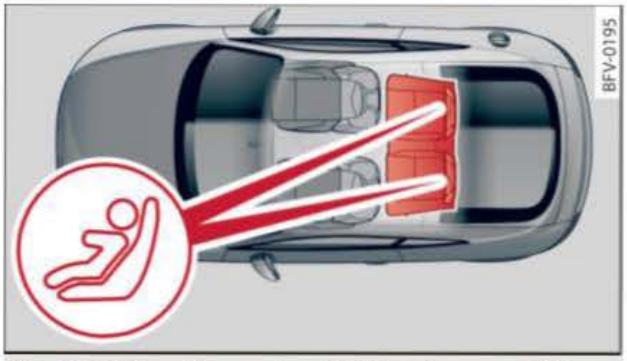


Fig. 170 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower universal anchorages system.

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.



Fig. 171 Lower anchorages, covers marked

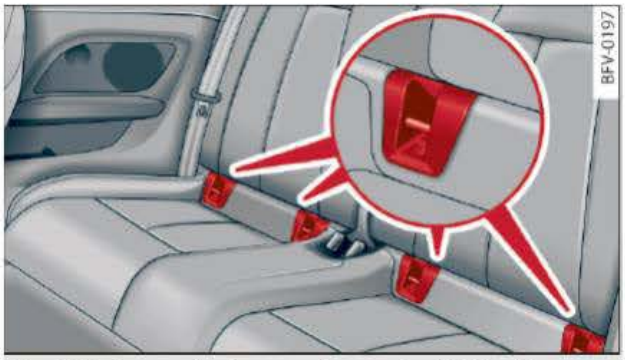


Fig. 172 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Lower anchorages

The circular markings on the rear seat help you to identify the location of lower anchorages for the two outboard seating positions ⇨ *fig. 171*. The LATCH lower universal anchorage attachment points are between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion.

Remove the covers ⇨ *fig. 171* to access the lower anchorage attachment points.

The lower anchorage attachment points are visible ⇨ *fig. 172*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system.

Please remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
- Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 212, Child safety*.

Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

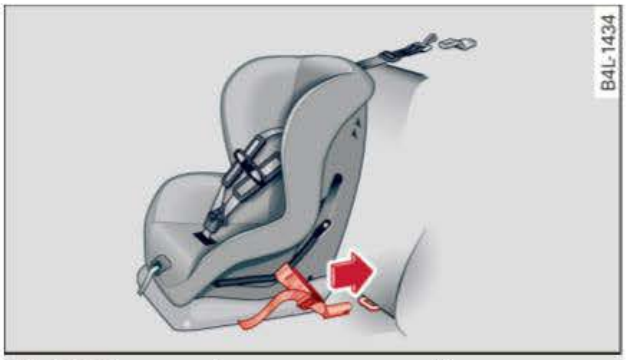


Fig. 173 Lower anchorages: proper mounting

Mounting

▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 173*.
- Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

- Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the "LATCH" system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 212, Child safety*.

Tether anchors and tether straps

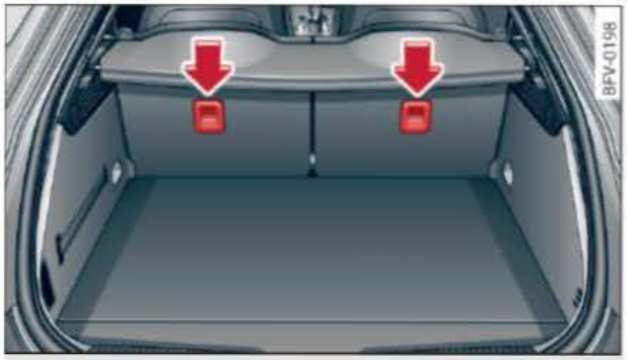


Fig. 174 Tether anchors: attachment hook locations behind the rear seatbacks

The tether anchors for the rear seating positions are located on the backside of the rear seatbacks .

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

– Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
– Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
– Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
– Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
– Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
– Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage



Fig. 175 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting



Fig. 176 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting

Installing the tether strap

▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
▸ Guide the upper tether strap into the rear cargo area ⇨ *fig. 176*.
▸ Slide the tether strap hook over the anchor bracket.
▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.
▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing the tether strap

▸ Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
▸ Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Additional information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
www.nhtsa.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or call 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi Customer Relations
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking and Filling

Fuel

Gasoline grade

The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline can be found on the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R+M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The following headings match the corresponding sticker in the fuel filler door.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY MIN. (R+M)/2 87 Regular / MIN. RON 91 Regular

Use regular gasoline with minimum 87 AKI / 91 RON ⇨ (!).

The maximum engine power is only reached if premium gasoline 91 AKI / 95 RON is used.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R+M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95

Using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON is recommended.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 87 AKI / 91 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

(!) Note

- Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
- When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.

(i) Tips

The vehicle can be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine.

Blended gasoline

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
- Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must not contain more than 15% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

(!) Note

- Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
– Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
– Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
– If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.

Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, carbon deposit build-ups can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refueling

Fuel filler neck

The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually - for detailed instructions see ⇨ *page 235*.

You can find the fuel tank capacity of your vehicle in ⇨ *page 299*.

The label on the inside of the fuel filler flap tells you the correct fuel for your vehicle. For more information about fuel specifications, see ⇨ *page 231*.

Your vehicle fuel tank has an onboard refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle. In order to fill the tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully.

WARNING

Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Gas canisters and other containers used to transport fuel can be dangerous. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852 - 86).

Note

Never drive your vehicle until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. Gasoline could enter the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fueling procedure

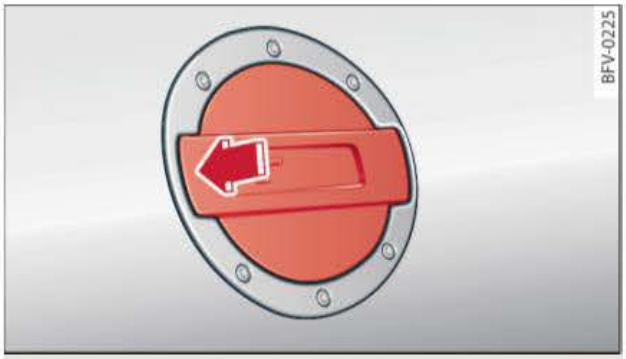


Fig. 177 Right rear vehicle side: opening the fuel filler door

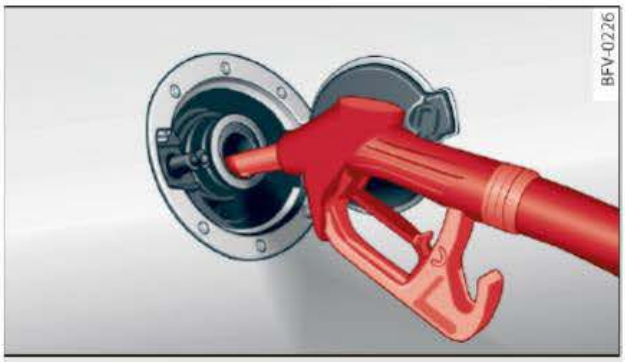


Fig. 178 Engaged fuel pump nozzle

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

- ▸ Press on the fuel filler door to open -arrow- ⇨ *fig. 177*. Your vehicle comes with a new tank system without a cap.
- ▸ Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the tank filler neck ⇨ *fig. 178*. Make sure it is correctly locked in place.
- ▸ Begin fueling. Once the pump nozzle switches off, the fuel tank is "full". Do not fill the tank more. Otherwise the expansion space in the tank will be filled.
- ▸ Pull the pump nozzle out of the tank filler neck five seconds after it has switched off, so that the rest of the fuel can flow out of the pump nozzle into the filler neck.
- ▸ Close fuel filler door until it latches.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. For additional information on fuel, refer to ⇨ *page 231*.

The fuel tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in the **Technical Data** section ⇨ *page 299*.

⚠ WARNING

Not paying attention when fueling or handling fuel incorrectly can lead to fires, explosions or serious injuries.

- – Fuel ignites easily and can cause serious burns and other injuries.
- – If you do not switch the engine off when fueling and/or do not insert the fuel nozzle completely into the tank opening, fuel can leak out or run over. Leaked fuel can ignite and start a fire.
- – Do not use the telephone while fueling. The electromagnetic rays can cause sparks, which can ignite fuel vapors and start a fire.
- – Do not sit in your vehicle while fueling. If you must make an exception and enter your vehicle again while fueling, close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the fuel nozzle. Static electricity can create sparks, which can ignite vapors when fueling.
- – Do not smoke or have an open flame in the area when fueling your vehicle or filling a fuel container because this increases the risk of an explosion.
- – For your safety, carrying fuel containers in your vehicle is not recommended. Whether full or empty, the container can leak and cause a fire in the event of an accident.
- – If you must make an exception and transport a fuel container, note the following:
  - – Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is in or on the vehicle. Static electricity is discharged when filling which can cause the fuel vapors to ignite and increases the risk of an explosion.
  - – Always place a fuel container on the ground before filling.
  - – Always hold the fuel nozzle completely in the fuel container when filling.
  - – If the fuel container is made of metal, the fuel nozzle must always be in contact with the container when filling it with fuel. This prevents static electricity from discharging.
  - – Never spill fuel in the vehicle or the luggage compartment. Evaporated fuel is ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

explosive and increases the risk of serious injury or death.
- Follow legal requirements when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
- Make sure the fuel container conforms to industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852-86).

Note

- Remove any overflowing fuel from the vehicle paint immediately.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

If the fuel nozzle is used correctly, it will indicate that the tank is full the first time it switches off automatically. Do not try to add more fuel, because it can spill over. Also, the expansion space in the tank will fill, which can result in fuel spilling out when it becomes warm and polluting the environment.

Tips

If adverse weather conditions cause the fuel filler door to freeze shut, press on the center of the filler door with the heel of your hand and then try opening it again.

Tips

- If the engine is running while fueling, vapors can escape or the fuel can spill over. Because of this, the fuel nozzle switches off before the tank is full.
- Do not fuel the vehicle when the ignition is switched on. Otherwise, the fuel gauge may not show the correct level after fueling the vehicle.
- Your vehicle is equipped with a misfueling guard. It allows the vehicle to be fueled only with the correct fuel pump nozzle.
- A worn or damaged nozzle or a nozzle that is too small may not be able to open the diesel misfueling protector. If this is the case, try turning the nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different fuel pump or see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- The misfueling guard does not open when adding fuel from a fuel container. When refueling with a reserve canister, you must use the funnel stored in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 234, fig. 179*.

Fueling with reserve canister (emergency fueling)



Fig. 179 Luggage compartment: funnel

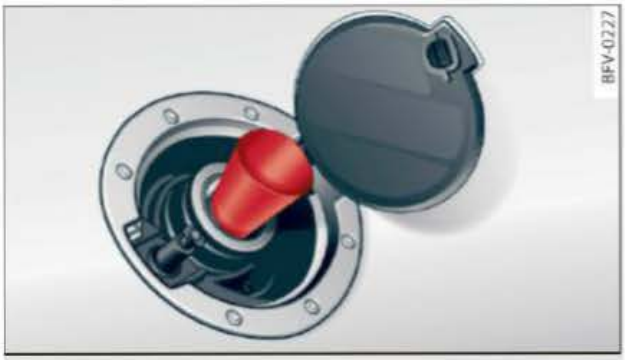


Fig. 180 Fuel tank filler neck with the mounted funnel

Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Fueling procedure on page 233*.

- ▸ Press on the fuel filler door to open -arrow- ⇨ *page 233, fig. 177*.
- ▸ Remove the cargo floor ⇨ *page 275*.
- ▸ Remove the plastic floor panel ⇨ *page 51, fig. 54*.
- ▸ Remove the funnel from the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Insert the funnel into the tank filler neck all the way until it stops ⇨ *fig. 180*. Make sure that the ring on the funnel goes into the fuel tank filler neck. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Guide the reserve canister filler tube into the funnel and start the emergency fueling.
- Remove the funnel after refueling and close the fuel filler door so that it latches shut.

Note

Remove any overflowing fuel from the vehicle paint immediately.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the fuel filler door lock is faulty, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.

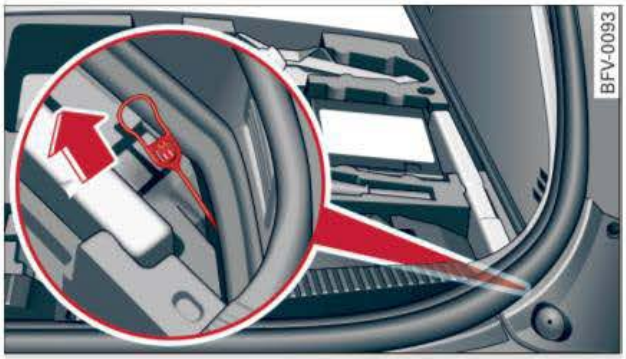


Fig. 181 Luggage compartment: cover in the right side trim panel

- Open the luggage compartment lid.
- Lift the cargo floor.
- Loosen the strap from its holder and pull on it carefully ⇨ *fig. 181*.

Catalytic converter

It is very important that your emission control system (catalytic converter) is functioning properly to ensure that your vehicle is running in an environmentally sound manner.

- Always use lead-free gasoline ⇨ *page 231, Gasoline grade*.
- Never run the tank down all the way to empty.
- Never put too much motor oil in your engine ⇨ *page 240, Adding engine oil*.
- Never try to push- or tow-start your vehicle.

The catalytic converter is an efficient "clean-up" device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine.

WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

- Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
- Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.
- Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.

Note

- Be aware that just one tank filling with **leaded** fuel will already seriously degrade the performance of the catalytic converter.
- Do not exceed the correct engine oil level ⇨ *page 240*.
- Do not drive until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat.
- Do not switch off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.
- To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:
  - Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.
  - Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the Emission Control System is operating properly, the exhaust gas can have a sulfur-like exhaust gas smell under some operating states. This depends on the sulfur content of the fuel being used. Using a different brand of fuel may help, or filling the tank with lead-free super grade gasoline.

Engine compartment

Working in the engine compartment

Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment

For work in the engine compartment such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the following listed warnings and general safety precautions. The engine compartment is a dangerous area. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Turn the engine off.
- switch the ignition off.
- Set the parking brake.
- Place the selector lever in the P position.
- Let the engine cool down.
- Never open the hood when you see that steam or coolant drips from the engine compartment- there is a danger of burns! Wait until no steam or coolant flows out.
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the freeze protection contained in the coolant) can catch fire.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially the battery.
- When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of personal injury.
- Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is warm. The cooling system is under pressure.
- To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a large cloth when opening.
- Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
- If tests need to be performed with the engine running, there is additional danger due to moving components (such as the ribbed belt, alternator and radiator fan) and from the high voltage ignition system.
- Do not under any circumstances give gas inadvertently (for example, by hand from the engine compartment) if the vehicle is stationary but the engine is running and a gear is engaged. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately and could result in a crash.
- Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  - Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the vehicle electrical system.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near open flames.
  - Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and injury, never touch the following components when the engine is running or is being started:
  - Ignition cable
  - Other components in the electronic high voltage ignition system
- If you must check or perform work on the engine while it is running:
  - Set the parking brake and place the selector lever in the P (park) position first.
  - Always proceed with extreme caution so that clothing, jewelry or long hair do not become caught in the radiator fan, fan belt or other moving components or do not come into contact with hot components. Tie back long hair before beginning ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

work and do not wear clothing that can hang down into the engine.
– Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to mix the fluids up. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening the hood

The hood is released from the interior.



Fig. 182 Driver footwell: release lever



Fig. 183 Unlocked hood: lever

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

- With the driver's door open, pull the lever below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 182*.
- Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the lever ⇨ *fig. 183* in the direction of the arrow. This releases the hooks.
- Open the hood.

⚠ WARNING

Never open the hood when you see that steam or coolant drips from the engine compartment- there is a danger of burns! Wait until no steam or coolant flows out.

Closing the hood

- Push the hood down until you overcome the force of the struts.
- Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

If the hood is not latched completely, it could fly up while you are driving and obstruct your vision.

– For safety reasons, the hood must always be closed securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.

– If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

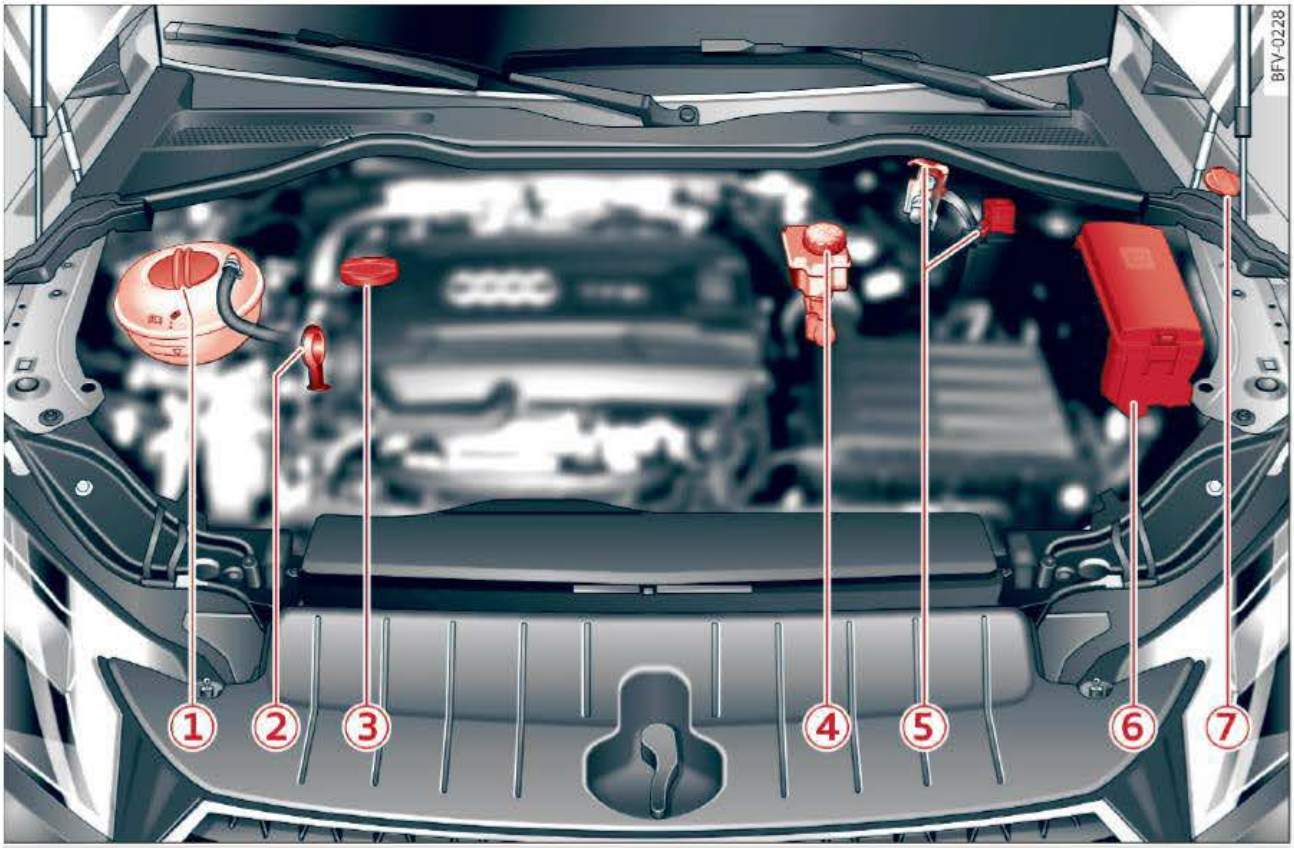


Fig. 184 Typical layout of the reservoir and the engine oil filler opening

① Coolant expansion tank (🜄) 242
② Engine oil dipstick 240
③ Engine oil filler opening (🛢) . . . 240
④ Brake fluid reservoir (🛞) 244
⑤ Jumpstart point (+) under a cover, (-) body ground point 289
⑥ Fuse housing 285
⑦ Washer fluid reservoir (🚿) 248

The engine oil dipstick and the engine oil filling opening ⇨ *fig. 184* (items ② and ③) may be located in different places depending on the engine design.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS before checking anything in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 236*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

The service interval display in the instrument cluster of your vehicle will inform you when it is time for an oil change. We recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized Audi Service Advisor.

If you have to top off the oil between oil changes, use the Audi oil quality standard specified in the table.

	Audi oil quality standard
Gasoline engine	VW 502 00 or VW 504 00

Using the proper engine oil is important for the functionality and service life of the engine. Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality oil which can usually be used throughout the entire year.

Note

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

- Use only a high quality engine oil that expressly complies with the Audi oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage.
- Do not mix any lubricants or other additives into the engine oil. Doing so can cause engine damage.

Tips

If you need to add oil and there is none available that meets the Audi oil quality standard your engine requires, you may add a total of no more than 0.5 qt/l of a high-quality "synthetic"oil that meets the following specifications.

- ACEA A3 or API SM with a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40.
- For more information about engine oil that has been approved for your vehicle, please contact either your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Customer Relations at 1 (800) 822-2834 or visit our web site at **www.audiusa.com** or **www.audicanada.ca**.

Engine oil consumption

The engine in your vehicle depends on an adequate amount of oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts.

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period (see ⇨ *page 56*) consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.

With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to regular and frequent checking of the oil level, see **Note**.

If the yellow engine oil level warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up, you should check the oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 240*. Top off the oil at your earliest convenience ⇨ *page 240*. ▶

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 236*.

Note

Driving with an insufficient oil level is likely to cause severe damage to the engine.

Tips

– **The oil pressure warning display is not an indicator of the oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**

– If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult an authorized Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. An authorized Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately.

Checking the engine oil level

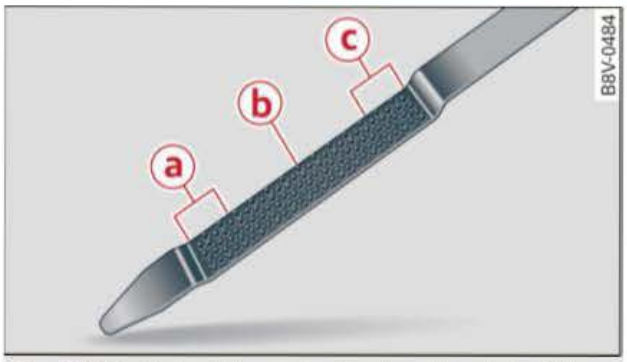


Fig. 185 Guide for determining levels on the oil dipstick

Determining the oil level

- Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- Let the engine run in idle briefly while it is at operating temperature and then shut the engine off.
- Wait approximately two minutes.
- Remove the oil dipstick. Wipe off the oil dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it all the way in again.
- Remove the dipstick again and then read the oil level ⇨ *fig. 185*. Add engine oil if necessary ⇨ *page 240*.

(a)	You must add oil. After adding oil, the level should be in the (c) area.
(b)	You may add oil. After adding oil, the level should be in the (c) area.
(c)	Do not add any oil.

The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart per 600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). Because of this, the engine oil level must be checked regularly. It would be best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

Adding engine oil



Fig. 186 Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

- Turn the engine off.
- Unscrew the engine oil filler opening cap ⇨ *fig. 186*, ⇨ *page 238, fig. 184*.
- Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 239*.
- Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇨ *page 240, Checking the engine oil level*.
- Add more oil if necessary.
- Close the engine oil filler cap and push the dipstick all the way in. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

- When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. There could be risk of a fire.
- You must secure the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
- Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.

Note

- The oil level must not be above the ⓒ range , because this can cause damage to the catalytic converter or the engine. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have excess oil extracted if necessary.
- Do not mix any additional lubricants into the engine oil. Damage cause by such additives is not covered by the warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
- Pay attention to legal requirements when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing the engine oil

We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ *page 236*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

If you choose to change your oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:

- Wear eye protection.
- To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.
- When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
- Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.

Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For the sake of the environment

- Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
- Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
- Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine coolant performs two functions: it keeps the engine from overheating and it protects the engine from freezing in the winter.

The cooling system is sealed and generally requires little attention.

The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a permanent coolant which does not need to be changed. The coolant consists of a mixture of specially conditioned water and the manufacturer's glycol-based coolant additive G13 antifreeze with anticorrosion additives (50% for USA models; 60% for Canadian models). This mixture both assures the necessary frost protection and protects metal components in the engine's cooling system from corrosion and scaling. It also raises the boiling point of the coolant.

Do not reduce the concentration of the coolant in the summer by adding plain water. **The proportion of coolant additive must be at least 50% but not more than 60%** to maintain antifreeze protection and cooling efficiency. If the coolant frost protection is too low, the coolant could freeze and damage the vehicle heating and engine cooling system.

For year-round driving, antifreeze is added at the factory for temperatures down to:

- - 31 °F (- 35 °C) USA
- - 40 °F (- 40 °C) Canada.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 236*.

Note

- Before winter sets in, have the coolant checked to see if the coolant additive in your vehicle is sufficient to meet the climate conditions. This is especially important if you live in a region where the winter is extremely cold. If necessary, increase the proportion of coolant additive to 60%.
- When adding coolant additive to your cooling system, remember:
  - We recommend using only coolant additive G12++ or G13 (check the label) for your vehicle. This coolant additive is available at authorized Audi dealers. Other types of antifreeze can significantly reduce corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion can cause a loss of coolant and serious engine damage.
- Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Adding coolant



Fig. 187 Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cover

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Read and follow the WARNINGS before checking anything in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 236*.

Checking the engine coolant level

- Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- switch the ignition off.
- Read the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 238, fig. 184*. The coolant level must be between the markings when the engine in cold. When the engine is warm it can be slightly above the upper marking.

Adding coolant

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

- Let the engine cool down.
- Place a cloth over the coolant expansion tank cap and unscrew the cap counterclockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 242* up to the upper marking.
- Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- Close the cap securely.

A coolant loss suggests a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, a loss can come from the coolant boiling through overheating and being pushed out of the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

The cooling system is pressurized and can become very hot. To reduce the risk of burns from hot coolant:

- Do not open the coolant expansion tank cap with the engine hot. There is a risk of burns.
- Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping coolant and steam by covering the coolant tank cap with a large, thick cloth.
- Turn the coolant tank cap counterclockwise slowly and keep light pressure on the cap.
- To reduce the risk of burns, do not allow any antifreeze or coolant to drip onto the exhaust system or hot engine components. The ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire under certain circumstances.
- The coolant additive and the coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, keep the coolant in the original container away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.
- When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of personal injury.

(!) Note

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Radiator fan

The radiator fan switches on automatically by itself.

An auxiliary electric radiator fan switches on and off depending on coolant temperature and other vehicle operating conditions.

After you switch the engine off, the auxiliary fan can continue running for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition off. It can even switch on again later by itself ⇨ ⚠, if

- the temperature of the engine coolant rises due to the heat build-up from the engine in the engine compartment, or
- the engine compartment heats up because the vehicle is parked in intense sunlight.

⚠ WARNING

- To reduce the risk of personal injury never touch the radiator fan.
- The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly even when the engine is not running. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The auxiliary radiator fan switches on automatically when the engine coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level

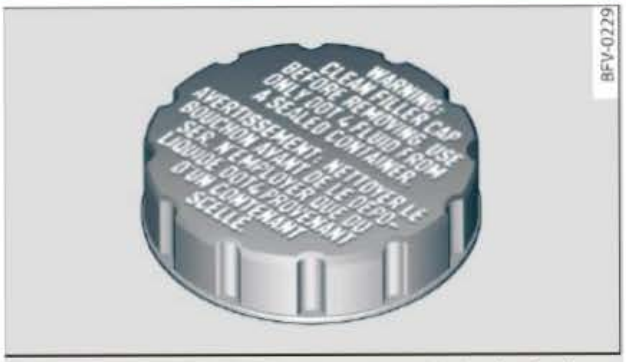


Fig. 188 Engine compartment: cover on the brake fluid reservoir

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ *page 236*.

▸ Read the brake fluid level from the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *fig. 188*, ⇨ *page 238, fig. 184*. The brake fluid level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

The location of the brake fluid reservoir can be seen in the engine compartment illustration ⇨ *page 238*.

The fluid level may drop *slightly* after some time due to the automatic adjustment of the brake pads. This is not cause for alarm.

If the brake fluid level falls *considerably* below the "MIN" mark, the brake warning/indicator light BRAKE (U.S. models) / (Canadian models) will come on ⇨ *page 11*. Do not continue to operate the vehicle. The complete brake system should be thoroughly checked by an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified facility and the cause corrected. If the brake fluid level is too low, the brake warning/indicator light will illuminate. Contact an authorized Audi dealer **immediately**.

Changing brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed by an experienced technician.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, corrosion in the brake system may result after a period of time. The boiling point of the brake fluid will also decrease considerably and decrease braking performance.

Therefore, the brake fluid must be changed **every two years**. Always use new brake fluid which conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard "FMVSS 116 DOT 4".

The brake fluid reservoir can be difficult to reach, therefore, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized **Audi dealer**. Your dealer has the correct tools, the right brake fluid and the know-how to do this for you.

WARNING

– Brake fluid is poisonous. It must be stored only in the closed original container out of the reach of children!
– Brake failure can result from old or inappropriate brake fluid. Observe these precautions:
  – Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J 1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard 116. Always check with your authorized Audi dealer to make sure you are using the correct brake fluid. The correct type of brake fluid is also indicated on the brake fluid reservoir.
  – The brake fluid must be new. Heavy use of the brakes can cause a vapor lock if the brake fluid is left in the system too long. This can seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes as well as your safety. This could result in an accident.

Note

Brake fluid will damage the paint of your vehicle. ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of brake fluid as well as the special tools required and the necessary expertise, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized Audi dealer.

Battery

General information

The battery in your Audi does not need any maintenance under **normal** operating conditions. Audi recommends having the electrolyte level check by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility when there are *high* outside temperatures or when driving all day. The electrolyte level should also be checked each time the battery is charged ⇨ *page 247*.

Have the battery checked when you bring your vehicle in for an inspection. It is a good idea to replace the battery if it is more than 5 years old.

Sometimes when the airbags deploy, the battery will be disconnected from the vehicle electrical system for safety reasons ⇨ ⚠ *in Repair, care and disposal of the airbags on page 203*.

Disconnecting the battery

The battery should not be disconnected. Several vehicle functions (power windows, for example) will be lost when the battery is disconnected. The functions must be reprogrammed after connecting the battery. To avoid this, the battery should only be disconnected from the vehicle electrical system when it is absolutely necessary.

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical consumers are gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time ⇨ *page 92*. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Winter operation

A lot of stress is placed on the battery during cold weather, which results in reduced starting ability. Have the battery checked and recharged if necessary before the cold weather begins.

⚠ WARNING

- Work on the battery requires expert knowledge. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for information regarding the vehicle battery. There is a risk for chemical burns or explosions.
- Never open the vehicle battery. Do not try to change the battery electrolyte level. Otherwise explosive gas will escape from the battery and increase the risk of an explosion.

Working on the battery

Be especially careful when working on or near the battery.

The battery is located in the luggage compartment under the floor. Before you check anything in the luggage compartment, **read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠.

Always heed the **safety warnings**, when working on the vehicle battery or the vehicle electrical system to prevent injury.

The following WARNINGS are very important when working on the battery:

Always heed the following WARNING SYMBOLS and safety precautions when working on the battery.	
	**Always wear eye protection.**
	**Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Always wear gloves and eye protection.**
	**No** **- sparks** **- flames** **- smoking.**

▶

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	**When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.**
	**Always keep the battery well out of reach of children.**

WARNING

Whenever working on the battery or on the electrical system, there is the risk of injury, accident and even fire. Read and heed the following WARNINGS:

- Always wear eye protection. Do not let battery acid or any lead particles get on your skin or clothing. Shield your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or other injury.
- Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Sulfuric acid can cause blindness and severe burns.
  - Always wear gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the battery because acid could leak out of the ventilation openings.
  - If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and get medical attention.
  - If you should ingest any battery acid, seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electric sparks or an open light.
- Do not smoke.
- Do not interchange the positive and negative cables.
- When working on the battery, be sure not to short-circuit the terminals with tools or other metal objects. This would cause the battery to heat up very quickly, which could lead to damage or explosion and personal injury.
- When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.
- Always keep the battery well out of the reach of children.
- Before work is done on the electrical system, disconnect the negative ground cable.
- Before performing any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine and ignition as well as any electrical equipment. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. If you are just going to replace a light bulb, then it is enough to switch off the lights.
- Before disconnecting the battery, switch off the anti-theft alarm system! Otherwise you will set off the alarm.
- When disconnecting the battery, first disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable.
- Before reconnecting the battery, make sure all electrical consumers are switched off. Reconnect the positive cable first and then the negative cable. Never interchange the cables - this could start a fire!
- Never charge a frozen or a thawed-out battery. It could explode! If a battery has frozen, then it must be replaced. A discharged battery can freeze over at 32 °F (0 °C).
- Make sure the vent hose is always attached to the opening on the side of the battery.
- Never use batteries which are damaged. There is the danger of an explosion! Always replace a damaged battery.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.

Note

- Do not disconnect the vehicle battery when the ignition is on or when the engine is running, otherwise, you will damage electronic components in the electrical system.
- If your vehicle is going to stand for a long period of time without being driven, protect the battery from “freezing”, otherwise it will be damaged and will then have to be replaced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Charging the battery

Battery charging connections are located in the engine compartment.



Fig. 189 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger and jump start cables

- Read the warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Working on the battery on page 246* and ⇨ ⚠.
- Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- Open the hood ⇨ *page 237*.
- Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 189*.
- Clamp the charger terminal clamps to the **jump start pins** according to the instructions. (pin under the red cover = "positive", pin with hexagonal head = "negative").
- Now insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- Now remove the charging device terminal clamps.
- Close the red cover on the positive terminal.
- Close the hood ⇨ *page 237*.

A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 ºF (0 ºC). A frozen or thawed out battery must no longer be used. The battery housing could be cracked by the formation of ice, which could cause battery acid to leak out ⇨ ⚠.

Battery charging (Maximum charging rate of 30 amps / 14.8 Volt)

When charging at *low* voltages (e.g. with a **trickle charger**), the battery cables do not have to be disconnected first. The battery caps should *not* be opened when charging a battery.

It is not necessary to remove the battery from the luggage compartment, and it is also not necessary to disconnect the cables.

Fast charging the battery (charging rate above 14.8 Volts)

For technical reasons do not use a battery charger that uses voltage greater than 14.8 Volts to charge your vehicle's battery.

⚠ WARNING

Charging a battery can be dangerous.
- Always follow the operating instructions provided by the battery charger manufacturer when charging your battery.
- Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.
- Do not reuse batteries which were frozen. The battery housing may have cracked and weakened when the battery froze.
- Charge the battery in a well ventilated area. Keep away from open flame or electrical spark. Do not smoke. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery is explosive.
- To reduce the danger of explosion, never connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating.
- Fast charging a battery is dangerous and should only be attempted by a competent technician with the proper equipment.
- Battery acid that may spill during charging should be washed off with a solution of warm water and baking soda to neutralize the acid.

Note

Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This will seriously damage sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc., as well as the battery charger.

Tips

Only charge the battery through the connections in the engine compartment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Battery replacement

The new battery must have the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery.

Intelligent energy management in your vehicle is responsible for distributing the electrical energy throughout your vehicle ⇨ *page 92*. The intelligent energy management system will keep the engine battery charged better than vehicles without this system. To make sure the additional electrical energy is available once again after you have changed the battery, we recommend that you install batteries of the same type and manufacture only (the same as those installed at the time your vehicle was delivered). Specifications are listed on the battery housing. Your authorized dealer must code the battery in the energy management system to enable you to use the energy management functions correctly after replacing the battery.

The new battery must have the same capacity, voltage (12-volts), amperage, construction and plug sealing.

When installing the battery, make sure the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off.

Note

Make sure the ventilation hose on the side of the battery is connected, otherwise fumes or battery acid can leak out.

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of a battery, we recommend your authorized Audi dealer change the battery for you. Batteries contain sulfuric acid and lead and must always be disposed of properly in compliance with all environmental regulations. Disposing of vehicle batteries improperly is very dangerous to the environment.

Windshield washer system



Fig. 190 Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

The windshield washer reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 238, fig. 184*. The reservoir capacity is found in ⇨ *page 299*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

Note

- The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions in the respective climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
- Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
- Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this can damage the paint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.



Fig. 191 Instrument cluster display: service interval display (example)

The service interval display works in two stages:

- **Inspection or oil change reminder:** after a certain distance driven, a message appears in the Infotainment system display each time the ignition is switched on or off ⇨ *fig. 191*. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
- **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on/off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection. Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals**.

Note

- Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.
- Calculating the time to the next oil change is interrupted when the vehicle battery is disconnected. If the vehicle is not driven for a long period of time, check the maintenance schedule so that you can follow the maintenance intervals.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

- Check your tires regularly for damage (punctures, cuts, cracks and bulges). Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
- If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
- Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
- Protect your tires from oil, grease and fuel.
- Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.
- Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

Tire designations

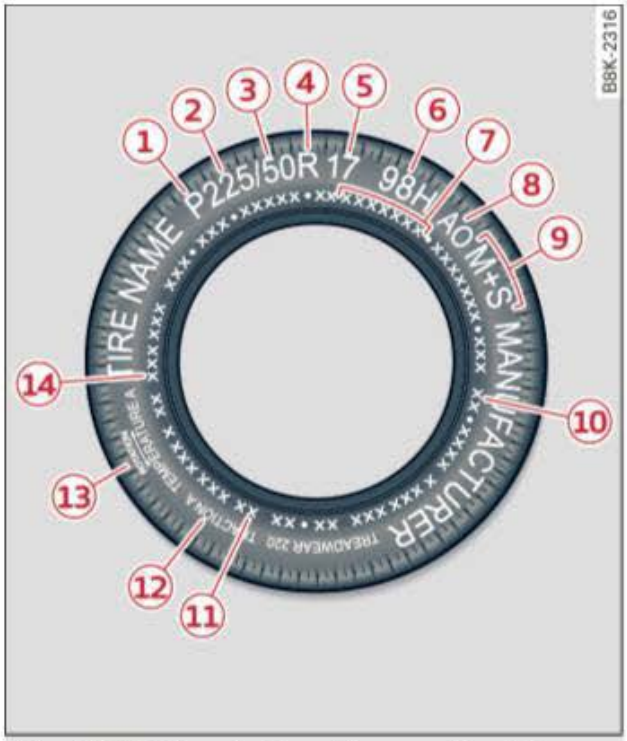


Fig. 192 Tire designation on the sidewall

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

P indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. T indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

R indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 265*.

"EXTRA LOAD", "xl" or "RF" indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a]

[a] For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code "ZR".

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2214 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2014.

⑧ Audi Original equipment tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation "AO" or "RO" have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards of safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

be happy to provide more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

"M/S" or "M+S" indicates the tire has characteristics that make it suitable for driving on mud and snow. ⛄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Tread wear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 266*.

⑬ Running direction

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight

(b) Accessory weight ▶

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs (68 kg) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 253, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 251*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 265*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 259, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2214 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2014. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 262*) and dividing by two. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 262* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ▸New tires do not yet have the optimum adhesion properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ▸Use tires of the same construction, size (rolling circumference) and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ▸Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ▸Audi recommends that you use Audi Original equipment tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire/rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

The spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle - for example, if winter tires or wide tires are installed - then only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

On **all wheel drive** vehicles, all four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different tire speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

circumference as the regular tires.

WARNING

–Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.

–For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles - in some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.

–Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.

–Only use tires that are more than 6 years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.

–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear/damage



Fig. 193 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.

–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration and heavy braking increase tire wear.

–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 193*. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1] when they have worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Wheel rotation

Rotating the wheels regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate wheels, install the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 282*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or different tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can especially have a negative effect on handling, on the risk aquaplaning when driving through water, when driving ▶

[1] Obey any applicable regulations in your country.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

through curves and when braking, which increases the risk of an accident.

Tire pressure



Fig. 194 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

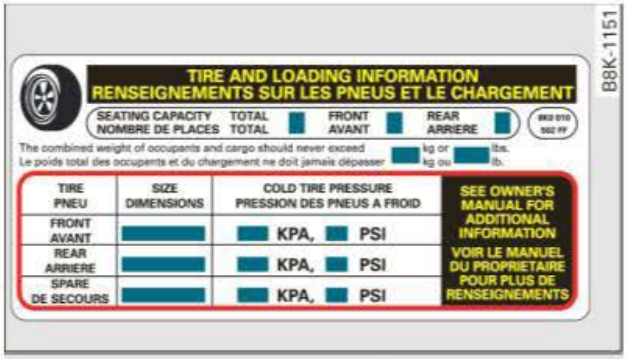


Fig. 195 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted in the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 194*, ⇨ *fig. 195*.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 262*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking/correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Check the label ⇨ *fig. 195* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System*: store the modified tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 269*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 262, Tires and vehicle load limits*.

–The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

–Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tips

Audi recommends using the tire pressure specified for a normal load ⇨ *table on page 262* or for a full load when the vehicle is partially loaded.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are differences between this information and the tire pressures specified on the label on the driver's side B-pillar, always follow the specification on the B-pillar label ⇨ *page 260, fig. 194*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed. ▶

161.561.8FV.21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2 people)				Maximum load			
		front		rear		front		rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
TT: 2.0L 4-Cylinder	245/45 R17 95H All Season	32	220	29	200	33	230	30	210
	245/40 R18 93H All Season	32	220	29	200	33	230	30	210
	245/35 R19 93Y XL High Performance	35	240	32	220	35	240	32	220

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 260* and load limits ⇨ *page 262*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar ⇨ *page 260, fig. 194*.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS"on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 260, fig. 194*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 260, fig. 194*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▸ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 250, fig. 192*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, refer to ⇨ *page 278, After changing a wheel*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

▸ Use winter tires on all four wheels. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
- Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
- Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 260*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

WARNING

– Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.
– Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ⛷ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains not only improve the driving in winter road conditions, but also the braking.

- Only install snow chains on the front wheels. This applies also to vehicles with all wheel drive*.
- Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Note the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Snow chains can damage the rims/wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.
– Using snow chains that add more than 0.53 in (0.53 in) of height can severely damage the wheel housings and other vehicle components.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be useful to switch on sport mode ⇨ *page 88*.

Low aspect ratio tires

Your Audi is factory-equipped with low aspect ratio tires. These tires have been thoroughly tested and been selected specifically for your model for their superb performance, road feel and handling under a variety of driving conditions. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for more details.

The low aspect ratio of these tires is indicated by a numeral of **55 or less** in the tire's size designation. The numeral represents the ratio of the tire's sidewall height in relation to its tread width ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

expressed in percentage. Conventional tires have a height/width ratio of 60 or more.

The performance of low-aspect-ratio tires is particularly sensitive to improper inflation pressure. It is therefore important that low aspect ratio tires are inflated to the specified pressure and that the inflation pressure is regularly checked and maintained. Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip ⇨ *page 260*.

What you can do to avoid tire and rim damage

Low aspect ratio tires can be damaged more easily by impact with potholes, curbs, gullies or ridges on the road, particularly if the tire is underinflated.

In order to minimize the occurrence of impact damage to the tires of your vehicle, we recommend that you observe the following precautions:

- Always maintain recommended inflation pressures. Check your tire pressure every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) and add air if necessary.
- Drive carefully on roads with potholes, deep gullies or ridges. The impact from driving through or over such obstacles can damage your tires. Impact with a curb may also cause damage to your tires.
- After any impact, immediately inspect your tires or have them inspected by the nearest authorized Audi dealer. Replace a damaged tire as soon as possible.
- Inspect your tires every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage and wear. Damage is not always easy to see. Damage can lead to loss of air and underinflation, which could eventually cause tire failure. If you believe that a tire may have been damaged, replace the tire as soon as possible.
- These tires may wear more quickly than others.
- Please also remember that, while these tires deliver responsive handling, they may ride less comfortably and make more noise than other choices.

Reduced performance in winter/cold season conditions

All tires are designed for certain purposes. The low aspect ratio, ultra high performance tires originally installed on your vehicle are intended for maximum dry and wet road performance and handling. They are not suitable for cold, snowy or icy weather conditions. If you drive under those circumstances, you should equip your vehicle with all-season or winter tires, which offer better traction under those conditions. We suggest you use the recommended snow or all-season tires specified for your vehicle, or their equivalent.

Refer to ⇨ *page 264* for more detailed information regarding winter tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

- Tread wear
- Traction AA A B C
- Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 250, fig. 192*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

⚠ WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

(!) General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator appears

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the Infotainment system display with an indicator light and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the Infotainment system again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 269*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 260, fig. 195*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

- the tire pressure in one or more tires is too low.
- the tire has structural damage.
- the tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 269*.
- the spare tire* is installed.

Indicator lights

- Loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠. Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. Check/correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 269*.

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) **Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual** - if TPMS appears after switching on the ignition or while driving and then the indicator light in the instrument cluster also starts to blink for about one minute and then stays on permanently, there is a system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 269*. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
- The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressures. You must check the tire pressures regularly.
- Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the pressure monitor indicator may be delayed.
- Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

Tips

- The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
- Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
- The tires with the identification “AO” or “RO” ⇨ *page 257* have been matched with your Audi tire pressure monitoring system. We recommend that you use these tires.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing tire pressures

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the Infotainment system.

- Make sure before storing that the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 258*.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitor**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The necessary care products can be obtained from your authorized Audi dealer. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Preferably use environmentally-friendly products when buying cleaning agents.
- Do not dispose of leftover cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits remain on the vehicle, the more the surface may be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicles with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not direct the stream of cleaning solution directly onto the side window seals, doors, luggage compartment lid or hood, tires, rubber hoses, insulating material or sensors*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use rotary nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car washes

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working down using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To avoid damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To avoid damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a shammy.

WARNING

- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator to reduce the risk of accidents.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
– After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

Note

– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must retract the extendable rear spoiler* if necessary, and fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
– To prevent paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges or similar items.
– Matte finish painted vehicle components:
  – To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  – Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  – Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle parts painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	⇨ *page 42*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors	Deposits	soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Component	Situation	Solution
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 298*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then protect with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Protect with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 270*

[a] Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Internal cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windows	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed using a soft brush.
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], allow to dry before letting them retract

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Component	Situation	Solution
Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary [a)]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Wool cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	fresh stains: absorbent cloth dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather Dried stains: grease dissolving spray
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use specially-colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as plastic parts

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

Note

- **Headlights/tail lights**
  - Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  - Do not use any cleaning product that contains alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
- **Wheels**
  - Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  - Damage to the protective layer on the rims such as stone chips or scratches must be repaired immediately.
- **Door windows**
  - Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To avoid scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  - Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
  - To avoid damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.
- **Decorative parts/trim**
  - Never use chrome care or cleaning products.
- **Paint**

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
- To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
- Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately - these could damage the paint.

– **Instrument cluster**

- Make sure that the instrument cluster is switched off and has cooled off before cleaning it.
- The instrument cluster and the trim surrounding it must not be cleaned with dry cleaning methods because they could get scratched.
- Make sure no fluids enter the spaces between the instrument cluster and the trim, because that could cause damage.

– **Controls**

- Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.

– **Safety belts**

- Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
- Never clean safety belts or their components chemically or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
- If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– **Textiles/artificial leather/Alcantara**

- Never treat artificial leather/Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remove or similar products.
- Have a specialist remove stubborn stains to prevent damage.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- Objects with sharp edges such as zippers, rivets on clothing or belts can cause damage to the surface.
- Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather**

- Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
- Objects with sharp edges such as zippers, rivets on clothing or belts can cause damage to the surface.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

- Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
- Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.

Placing your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a longer time, contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, maintenance and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the battery ⇨ *page 245*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency assistance

General information

- Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a flat tire. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. It you are on a steep incline, be especially careful.
- Set the parking brake.
- Place the selector lever in the P position.
- Switch the emergency flashers on.
- Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Follow the steps given above. This is for your protection and the for the safety of other drivers.

Equipment

Vehicle tool kit/tire mobility kit/ compressor



Fig. 196 Luggage compartment: cargo floor closed

The vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit and compressor are stored in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

- Push on the plastic handle and lift up the cargo floor.
- Open the cargo floor.

Completely retract the vehicle jack arm before storing the vehicle jack*.

WARNING

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

- Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
- The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
- Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.
- Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.

Tips

The vehicle jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Tire mobility kit

Preparation

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 275, General information*.
- Select the P position.
- Check if a repair with the tire mobility kit is possible ⇨ *page 275*.

Using the tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit



Fig. 197 Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Change the spare tire as soon as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tire is pierced by an object such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire mobility kit is able to be used at temperatures as low as – 4 °F (– 20 °C).

The tire mobility kit may not be used:

– If the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 in (4 mm) ① ⇨ *fig. 197*.
– if the rim is damaged ②.
– if you drove with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire ③.

See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance in these situations.

⚠ WARNING

– Please note that the tire mobility kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily.
– The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothes.
– If tire sealant gets in your eyes or on your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
– Do not inhale the fumes.
– If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
– Change your clothes immediately if they get tire sealant on them.
– If an allergic reaction occurs, seek immediate medical attention.
– Keep the tire sealant away from children.

Tips

– If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.
– Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor*.
– Obey all laws.

Repairing tires

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

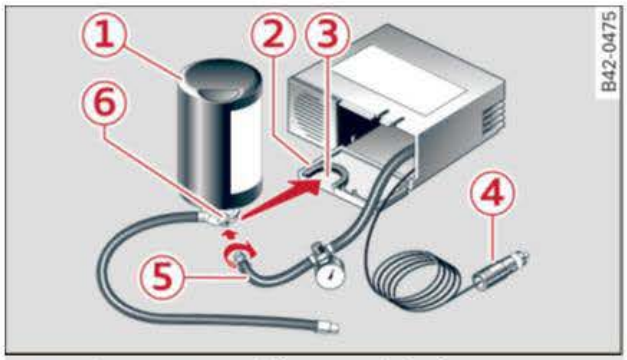


Fig. 198 Components of the tire mobility kit

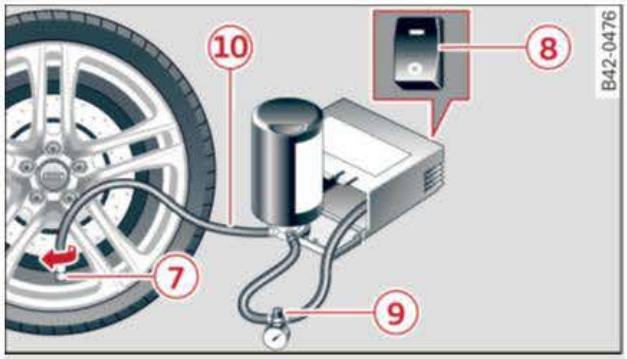


Fig. 199 Tire mobility kit connection

Requirement: the tire mobility kit must be laid out and ready for use ⇨ *page 275*.

Installing the tire mobility kit

▸ Open the cover ② on the compressor ⇨ *fig. 198*.
▸ Remove the connector ④ and pressure hose ⑤ with pressure gauge from the housing.
▸ Install the compressor pressure hose ⑤ onto the flange ⑥ of tire sealant bottle ①.
▸ Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening ③ on the compressor cover.
▸ Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
▸ Install the filler hose ⑩ onto the valve ⑦ ⇨ *fig. 199*.
▸ Connect the plug ④ ⇨ *fig. 198* to a socket in the vehicle.
▸ Switch on the ignition.

Inflating a tire

▸ Move the switch ⑧ ⇨ *fig. 199* on the compressor into position **I**. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Inflate the tire to between 29 psi (200 kPA) and 36 psi (250 kPA) and read the pressure on the gauge.
- If this tire pressure is not reached, remove the filler hose. Drive slowly approximately 33 ft (10m) forward or in reverse so that the sealant can be distributed in the tire. Pump up the tire again ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Read and follow the manufacturer's safety precautions on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
– If a tire pressure of 29 psi (200 kPA) cannot reached after inflating for 6 minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
– If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

Do not operate the compressor for more than 6 minutes continuously, or it can overheat. Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.

Completing

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- Adhere the sticker that says "max. 50 mph (max. 80 km/h)" that is provided with the tire mobility kit within the driver's field of vision.
- Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- If the tire pressure is lower than 19 psi (130 kPA), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.

WARNING

If the tire pressure is less than 19 psi (130 kPA) after 10 minutes of driving, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

Pay attention to the following after repairing the tire:
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
– Avoid hard acceleration, braking sharply, and fast cornering.
– The vehicle may become more difficult to control.
– If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

Tips

Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

Replacing wheels

Before changing a wheel

Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.

- After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇨ ⚠.
- All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇨ ⚠.
- Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇨ ⚠.
- Move **selector lever to position P** ⇨ ⚠.
- Take the **jack** ⇨ *page 275* and the **spare tire** ⇨ *page 283* out of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
– To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in P (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.
– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
– Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 176*.

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.

1. Remove the **decorative wheel cover***. For more details see also ⇨ *page 278, Decorative wheel covers* or ⇨ *page 279, Wheels with wheel bolt caps*.
2. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇨ *page 279*.
3. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇨ *page 280*.
4. **Raise** the car with the jack ⇨ *page 280*.
5. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install **the spare** ⇨ *page 281*.
6. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
7. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
8. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts ⇨ *page 279*.
9. Replace the decorative **wheel cover***.

WARNING

Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇨ ⚠ *in Raising the vehicle on page 280* and ⇨ *page 282*.

After changing a wheel

A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.

- Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 176*.
- Check the **tire pressure** on the spare wheel immediately after mounting it.
- As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 90 ft lb (120 Nm).
- Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

Tips

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.
– After changing a wheel, the tire pressure in all four tires must be checked/corrected and the tire pressure monitoring indicator must be stored in the Infotainment ⇨ *page 269*.

Decorative wheel covers

Gilt für: with decorative wheel covers

The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.



Fig. 200 Changing a wheel: Removing the wheel cover ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing

- Insert the **hook** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) in the hole in the wheel hub cover.
- Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇨ *fig. 200*.

Wheels with wheel bolt caps

Gilt für: with wheel bolts with caps

The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.



Fig. 201 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

Removing

- Push the **plastic clip** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) over the wheel bolt cap until the inner retainers on the clip align with the edge of the cover.
- Remove the cap with the **plastic clip** (vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 201*.

Refitting

- Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back on.

The caps are to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean.

Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.



Fig. 202 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

Loosening

- Slide the **wheel wrench** onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇨ *fig. 202*.

Tightening

- Slide the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

WARNING

– Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.
– *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - You risk an injury.

Tips

– Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
– If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

car to keep your balance and take care not to slip.

Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

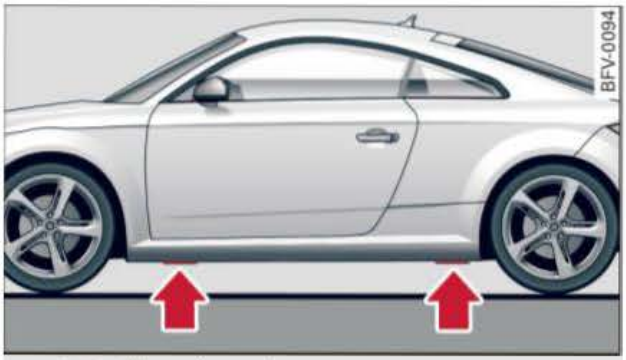


Fig. 203 Sill panels: markings

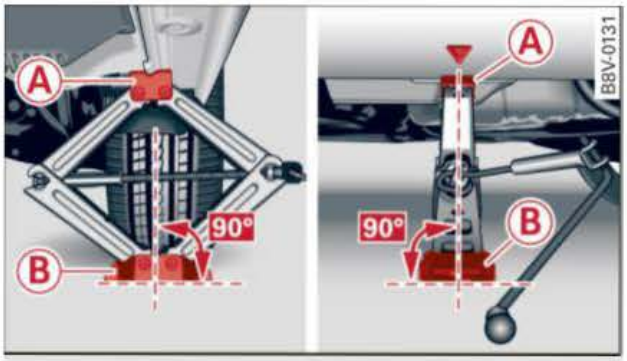


Fig. 204 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally.
- Move the **selector lever to position P**.
- Find the **marking** (imprint) on the sill that is nearest the wheel that will be changed. Behind the marking, there is a **lifting point** on the sill for the vehicle jack.
- Vehicles with a sill: note the position of the sill when positioning the vehicle jack ⇨ *fig. 204*.
- Place the vehicle jack (vehicle tool kit) on a firm surface. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. On a slippery surface such as tile, you should use a non-slip pad (such as a rubber mat) ⇨ ⚠.
- Turn the **vehicle jack** located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 204* is located under the designated plastic mount ⇨ ⚠, ⇨ ⓘ.
- Align the jack so that its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 204* engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the movable base Ⓑ lies flat on the ground. The base Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ.
- Wind the jack up further until the flat tire comes off the ground ⇨ ⚠.

Position the vehicle jack **only** under the designated lifting points on the sill ⇨ *fig. 203*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ ⓘ.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  - Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
  - A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  - On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
  - Only raise your vehicle with the vehicle jack provided by the factory. If you use a vehicle jack for another vehicle, your vehicle can slide and cause injury.
  - Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.
  - Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
  - Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk of injury.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
  – Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.
– Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.

Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points on the sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

Taking the wheel off/installing the spare

Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel.

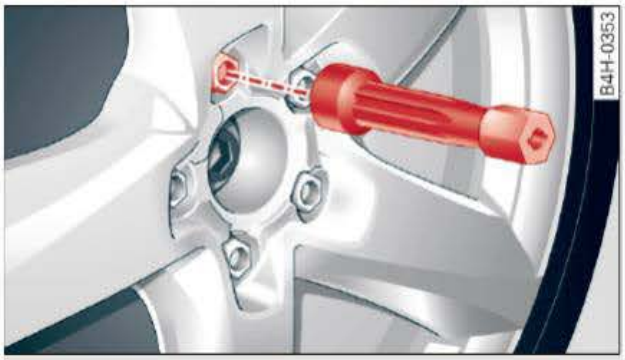


Fig. 205 Changing a wheel: using the screwdriver handle (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts

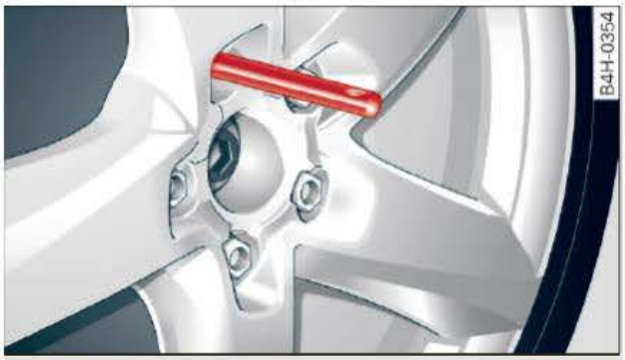


Fig. 206 Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows:

Removing the wheel

- Use the **hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle** to completely remove the topmost wheel bolt and set it aside on a *clean* surface ⇨ *fig. 205*.
- Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 206*.
- Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole ⇨ (!).

Putting on the compact spare wheel

- Lift the spare wheel and carefully slide it over the alignment pin to guide it in place ⇨ (!).
- Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to screw in and tighten all wheel bolts *slightly*.
- Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.
- Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇨ *page 279*. Tighten them *crosswise*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

Tips

Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
– Pull the reversible blade from the screwdriver before you use the hexagonal socket in the handle to turn the wheel bolts. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 282*.
– The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.

Tires with unidirectional tread design

Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.

Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

– The direction of rotation is marked by an arrow on the side of the tire.
– If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
– We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
– Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire.

Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 257* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

– **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after installation.**
– **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.**
– **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 90 ft lb (120 Nm).**
– **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**
– **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

– If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 257*.
– Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
– In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
– Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Spare tire

General information

Applies to: vehicles with space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)



Fig. 207 Luggage compartment: spare tire



Fig. 208 Spare tire (example)

The spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and replaced if necessary by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

Removing the spare tire

- ▸ Turn the handle ⇨ *fig. 207* (1) counter-clockwise.
- ▸ Remove the spare tire.

Removing the vehicle jack

- ▸ Lift up the cover on the right side of the luggage compartment and remove the vehicle jack.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is not permitted.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare wheel in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

WARNING

- After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible. The tire pressure is available on ⇨ *page 260, fig. 195*.
- If the spare tire is more than 6 years old, use it only in an emergency and with extreme caution and careful driving.
- The spare tire is intended only for temporary and short-term use. It should be replaced as soon as possible with the normal wheel and tire.
- After mounting the compact spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible. The tire pressure of the compact spare tire must be 61 psi (420 kPA); otherwise, you risk having an accident.
- Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h). You risk having an accident.
- Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering. You risk having an accident.
- Never drive using more than one spare wheel and tire. You risk having an accident.
- Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.
- For technical reasons, the use of tire chains on the spare tire is not permitted. If it is necessary to drive with tire chains, the spare wheel must be mounted on the front axle in the event of a flat in a rear tire. The newly available front wheel must then be installed in place of the rear wheel with the flat tire. Installing the tire chain before mounting the wheel and tire is recommended.
- Loose items in the passenger compartment can cause serious personal injury during ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

hard braking or in an accident. Never store the inflatable spare tire or jack and tools in the passenger compartment.

– Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses and bulbs

Electrical fuses

Replacing fuses

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.



Fig. 209 Steering column area: cover

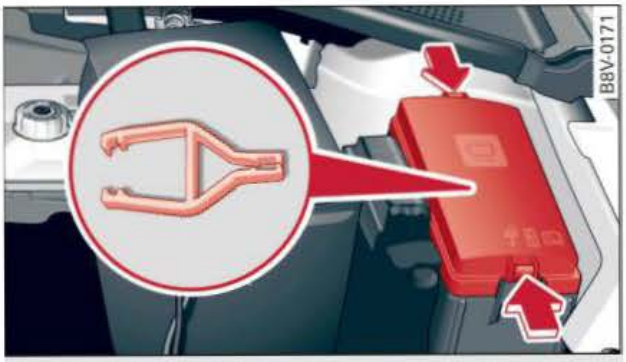


Fig. 210 Left side of the engine compartment: fuse cover

The individual circuits are protected by safety fuses. The fuses are located in the interior and in the engine compartment.

Fuses in the interior

- Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment ⇨ *page 286*.
- Remove the cover ⇨ *fig. 209*.
- Remove the plastic clip from the fuse panel cover in the engine compartment ⇨ *fig. 210*.
- Remove the fuse using the clamp.
- Replace the blown fuse only with an identical new one.
- Install the cover.

Fuses in the engine compartment

- Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment ⇨ *page 287*.
- Remove the fuse panel cover ⇨ *fig. 210*.
- Remove the plastic clip from the fuse panel cover ⇨ *fig. 210*.
- Remove the fuse using the clamp.
- Replace the blown fuse only with an identical new one.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
green	30
orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
– Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior fuse assignment

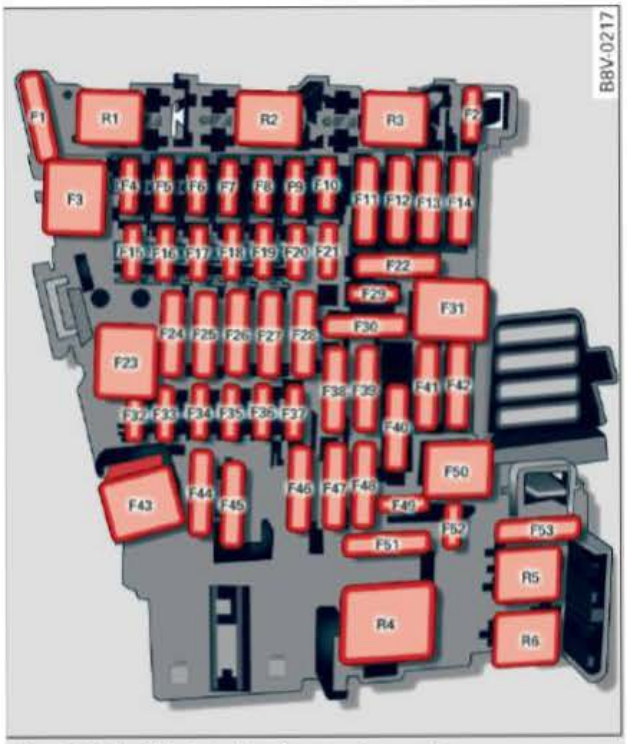


Fig. 211 Vehicle interior: fuse assignment

No.	Equipment
F1	Power top control module (Roadster)
F2	Power top control module (Roadster)
F3	ESC control module
F4	Central computer processor (MIB-2)
F5	Gateway
F6	Anti-theft alarm system
F7	Climate control system, selector lever (automatic transmission), parking heater, rear window heater relay coil
F8	Diagnosis, electrical parking brake switch, light switch, rain/light sensor, interior lighting
F9	Steering column switch module
F10	Display
F11	Haldex clutch
F12	MMI area
F13	Adaptive dampers control module
F14	Climate control system blower
F15	Electronic steering column lock
F16	MMI components, safety belt microphone (Roadster)
F17	Instrument cluster
F18	Rearview camera
F19	Convenience key system control module
F20	Power lumbar support adjustment
F22	Front passenger's side upper cabin heating (Roadster)
F23	Right exterior lighting, on-board computer (right)
F25	Door/driver's side doors (for example power windows)
F26	Seat heating
F28	AMI High media port
F29	On-board computer
F31	Left on-board computer
F32	Driver assistance systems
F33	Airbag
F34	Socket relay, interior sound, back-up light switch, temperature sensor, oil level sensor
F35	Diagnosis, headlight range control system, air quality sensor, automatic dimming rearview mirror
F36	Right cornering light / right LED-headlight
F37	Left cornering light / left LED-headlight
F38	Engine control module, ESC control module
F39	Door/front passenger's side doors (for example, power windows)
F40	Cigarette lighter, sockets
F41	SCR relay and delivery unit
F42	Central locking area
F43	On-board computer
F45	Power adjustable driver's side seat
F46	Driver's side upper cabin heating (Roadster)
F49	Starter, clutch sensor
F50	ESC valves
F53	Rear window defogger

The power seats* are protected via **circuit breakers** that automatically switch on after a few seconds after the overload has been reduced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Left engine compartment fuse assignment

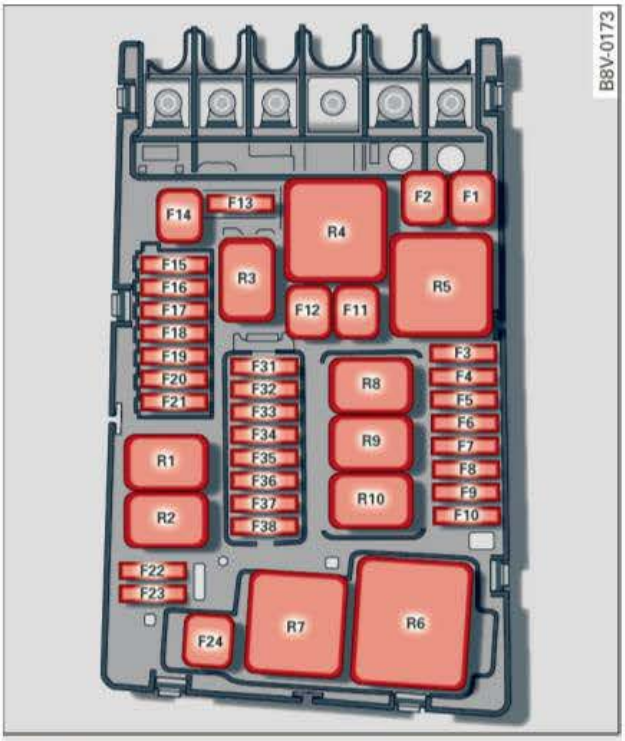


Fig. 212 Engine compartment: fuse assignment

No.	Equipment
F1	ESC control module
F2	ESC control module
F3	Engine control module
F4	Engine cooling, engine components, auxiliary heater coil relay (1+2), secondary air injection pump relay
F5	Engine components, tank system
F6	Brake light sensor
F7	Engine components
F8	Oxygen sensor
F9	Engine components, exhaust door, glow time control module
F10	Fuel injectors, fuel control module
F11	Auxiliary heater heating element 2
F12	Auxiliary heater heating element 3
F13	Automatic transmission control module
F15	Horn
F16	Ignition coil
F17	ESC control module, engine control module
F18	Terminal 30 (reference voltage)
F19	Windshield wipers
F20	Horn
F22	Terminal 50 diagnosis
F23	Starter
F24	Auxiliary heater heating element 1
F32	LED headlights

Bulbs

Message

Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free headlights and tail lights. However, if a light bulb needs to be replaced, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

Starting with jumper cables

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large **cross section** to carry the starter current safely. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *insulated* terminal clamps which are distinctly marked:

plus (+) cable in most cases colored **red**

minus (-) cable in most cases colored **black**.

WARNING

Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.

- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
- A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures just below 32 °F (0 °C). Before connecting a jumper cable, you must thaw the frozen battery completely, otherwise it could explode.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.
- Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
- Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
- Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.
- The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
- Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.
- Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.
- Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.
- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 236*.

Note

- Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
- There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected.

Tips

The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When jump starting or charging the battery, never connect the negative ground cable to the battery negative post because the battery manager system must be able to detect the battery's state of charge. Always connect the negative ground cable to the negative ground post of the battery manager control unit.

Use of jumper cables

Make sure to connect the jumper cable clamps in exactly the order described below!



Fig. 213 Engine compartment:: connectors for jump start cables and charger

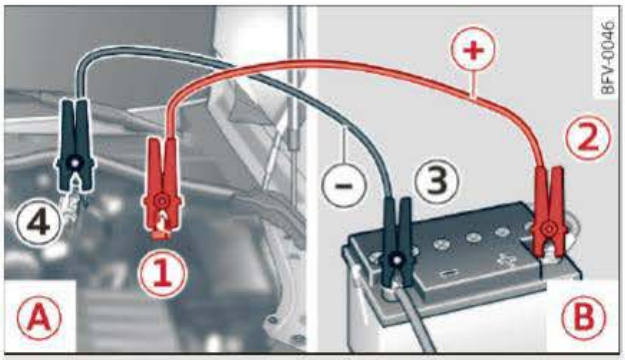


Fig. 214 Jump starting with the battery of another vehicle:: A - discharged vehicle battery, B - booster battery

The procedure described below for connecting jumper cables is intended to provide a jump start for your vehicle.

Vehicle with discharged battery:

- Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to N (Neutral) or P (Park) and set parking brake.

Connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) (red)

- Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 213*.

1. Connect one end of the red positive cable on the **jump start bolt** ⇨ *fig. 214* ① (bolt under the red cover = "positive") of the vehicle to be started Ⓐ.
2. Connect the other end to the positive terminal ② of the booster battery Ⓑ.

Connect NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) (black)

3. Connect one end of the black negative cable to the negative terminal ③ of the booster battery Ⓑ.
4. Connect the other end to the **jump start pin** ④ ("negative") of the vehicle to be started Ⓐ.

Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery Ⓑ. Run the engine at a moderate speed.
- Start engine with discharged vehicle battery Ⓐ in the usual manner.
- If the engine fails to start, do not keep the starter cranking for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and then try again.
- With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact *reverse* order.
- Close the red cover on the positive terminal.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior. Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their metal parts in full contact with the battery terminals.

WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

– Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.
– When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 236*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

– Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) ground post of the battery manager control unit.
– Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
– Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the negative **(–)** cable to the negative **(–)** terminal on the discharged battery ④ ⇨ *fig. 214*. Instead, securely connect the negative **(–)** cable to either a solid metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself. If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode!

Towing with a tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

– **Never tow your Audi. Towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
– **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
– **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flat bed truck.**
– **To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 290* and ⇨ *page 291*.

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

Front towing loop



Fig. 215 Front bumper: cover



Fig. 216 Front bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located behind a cover on the right side of the front bumper.

- Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 275*.
- Press inward on the *upper left* side of the cap to remove it from the bumper ⇨ *fig. 215*.
- Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 216* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear towing loop

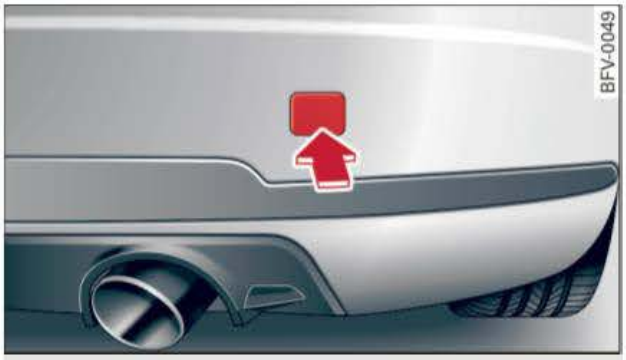


Fig. 217 Rear bumper: cover



Fig. 218 Rear bumper: installing the towing loop

There are threads located behind the right side of the rear bumper where a towing loop can be installed.

- Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 275*.
- To remove from the bumper, push the cap inward in the *lower* area -arrow- and lift it up in the *upper* area ⇨ *fig. 217*.
- Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 218* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Loading the vehicle onto a flat bed truck



Fig. 219 Vehicle on flat bed truck

Front hook up

- Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

Rear hook up

- Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Raising the vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.



Fig. 220 Front lifting point



Fig. 221 Rear lifting point

- Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 220* and ⇨ *fig. 221*.
- Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

The vehicle jack mode* must be activated so that the automatic adjustment of the Adaptive Air Suspension* does not make it more difficult to raise the vehicle with the floor jack.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 220*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the on-board jack ⇨ *fig. 221*.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 280*.

⚠ WARNING

- To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  - Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 220* and ⇨ *fig. 221*.
  - Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.
- When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

Note

- Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  - **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  - **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**
  - **Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.**

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Consumer information

Warranty coverages

Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:

- *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
- *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
- *Emissions Control System Warranty*
- *Emissions Performance Warranty*
- *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
- *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**.

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

- unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
- fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
- service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
- replacement parts may not be readily available.
- Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside North America.

Note

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals and Literature are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service manuals and literature are available to order from the Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.audi.techliterature.com

Maintenance

General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

- oil changes, and
- cleaning or replacing the air filter.

For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.

Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ **and** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 236.*

⚠ WARNING

- Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.
- Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.
- Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.
- Always switch off the ignition before anyone gets under the vehicle.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.
- Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in P (Park position) and the park brake is applied.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For the sake of the environment

– Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
– Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
– Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Accessories and technical changes

Additional accessories and parts replacement

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

WARNING

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.
– Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts
– These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.
– Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 236*.

Note

– If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle's engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
– If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
– The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations.

Technical Modifications

Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇨ ⚠.

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇨ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

WARNING

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

Note

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunication and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Devices

The following devices each comply with FCC Part 15.19, FCC 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

– Audi side assist*
– Cell phone package*
– Convenience key*
– Electronic immobilizer
– Garage door opener (HomeLink)*
– Remote control key

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen Issue 1

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Technical data

Vehicle identification



Fig. 222 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) plate: location on driver's side dash panel

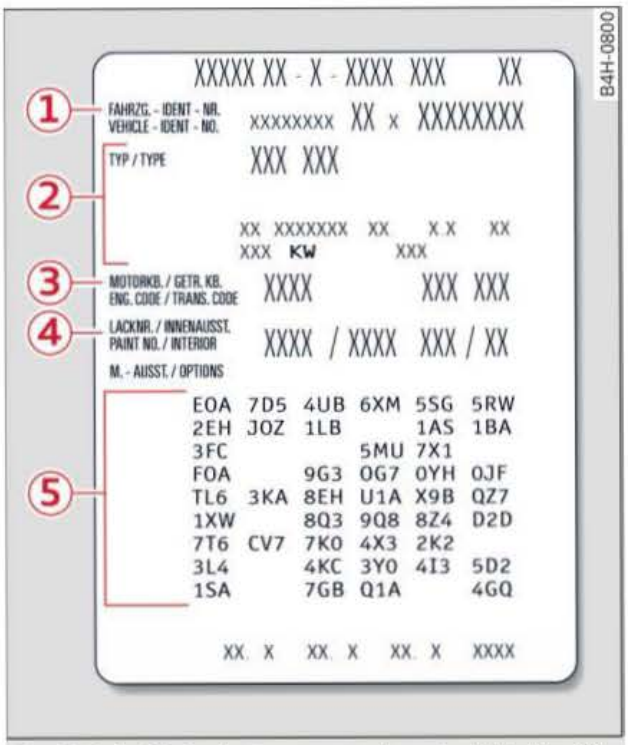


Fig. 223 Inside the luggage compartment: vehicle identification label

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The Vehicle Identification Number is located in different places:

– under the windshield on the driver's side .
– in the Infotainment
– on the vehicle identification label.

Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label is located in the luggage compartment in the spare wheel well.

The label shows the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission code
④ Paint number and interior
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

The information of the vehicle identification label can also be found in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side. It shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

High voltage warning label

The high voltage warning label is located in the engine compartment next to the engine hood release. The spark ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

Weights

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which includes passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight ⇨ ⚠.

Gross Axle Weight Rating

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle capacity weight

The vehicle capacity weight (max. load) is listed either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap.

WARNING

- The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
- Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.

Note

- The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.
- Always observe local regulations.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model and equipment.

Length	in (mm)	164.7 (4,184)
Width	in (mm)	72.1 (1832)
Width across the mirrors	in (mm)	77.4 (1966)
Height at curb weight	in (mm)	53.3 (1353)

When driving on poor roads, by curbs and on steep ramps, make sure that low-lying components such as the spoiler and exhaust system do not come into contact with these or they could be damaged. This applies especially when the vehicle is fully loaded.

Capacities

Fuel tank	gal (l)	approx. 14.5 (55)
Windshield and headlight washer system*	gal (l)	approx. 2.4 (9.0)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gasoline engines

TT Coupe 2.0, 4 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	220 @ 4500 - 6200
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	350 @ 1600 - 4400
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	121 (1984)
Fuel	⇨ *page 231*	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A

A/C (climate control system) 53
Accessing media 159
Accessories 296
Active lane assist 74
Activating vibration warning 76
Adjusting steering time 76
Indicator light 75
Messages 75
switching on and off 75
Adaptive dampers 80
Adaptive light (indicator light) 17
Adjusting air distribution (Climate control system) 53
Adjusting the air vents 54
Adjusting the center console lighting 39
Adjusting the sound (tone) 169
Adjusting the temperature (climate control system) 53
Adjusting the volume
Multifunction steering wheel 21, 22, 104
Advanced Airbag System
Children 213
Components 195
Front airbags 193
How the components work together 197
Airbag 188
Indicator light 15
Airbag system 207
Advanced Airbag-System 192
Care 202
Child restraints 214
Components (front airbags) 195
Danger of fitting a child safety seat on the front passenger seat 189
Disposal 202
Front airbags 192
How do the front airbags work? 197
How many airbags does my vehicle have? 195
Important information 188
Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system 205
Knee airbags 204
Monitoring 199
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 200
Repairs 202
Safety instructions 202
Side airbags 206
Side curtain airbags 209
Warning/Indicator lights 199
When must the system be inspected? ... 199
Alarm system
refer to Anti-theft alarm system 25, 30
Alignment pin (tire changing) 275
All season tires 264
All weather lights 36
All wheel drive 91
Ambient lighting 38
AMI
refer to Audi music interface 155
Announcements (settings)
refer to Voice guidance 138
Anti-freeze
Windshield washer system 248
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 87
Anti-slip regulation 87
Anti-theft alarm system 30
Ashtray 47
Aspect (video) 162
Audi connect 121
Activating 121
Configuring 126
Connecting 121
Connection settings 167
Data connection 127
Data protection 129
Functions 123
Navigation 123, 134
Notes 128
Options 125
Preview 123
Requirements 121
Services 123
Audi connect services
Media 125
Navigation 125
Telephone 125
Audi music interface 155
Audi music stream
refer to Wi-Fi audio player 153
Audio files 159
Audio player
Bluetooth audio player 152
Wi-Fi audio player 153

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio track 162
Audi phone box 111
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 294
Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) 8
AUTO
Automatic climate control system 53
Automatic headlights 36
Auto Lock (central locking) 25
Automatic belt retractor 184
Automatic climate control system
refer to Climate control system (automatic) 53
Automatic key 25
Automatic post-collision braking system ... 87
Automatic transmission 64
Driving tips 66
Emergency mode 70
Hill descent control 68
Kick-down 69
Launch Control-Program 69
malfunction 65
Selector lever emergency release 71
Selector lever lock 65
Selector lever positions 64
Shifting manually 68
Steering wheel with shift paddles 68
tiptronic 68
Automatic wipe/wash system 41
Automatic zoom 141
Auto Safety Hotline 178
AUX input 155
Average consumption 23
Average speed 23
Avoid damaging the vehicle 56

B

Balance (sound) 169
Bass (sound) 169
Battery 245
Charge level 92
Charging 13, 247
Disconnecting/connecting 245
Energy management 92
Important warnings 245
Indicator light 13
Jump starting 288
Location 245
Not running for long periods of time 245
Replacing the battery 248
Winter operation 245
Working on the battery 245
Before driving 171
Better route 143
Blended gasoline 231
Blocked route 138
Blocking roads 137
Blower (climate control system) 53
Bluetooth
Audio player 152
Connecting a cell phone 110
Device search 119
Settings 119
Booster seats 221
Brake fluid
Changing the brake fluid 244
Checking the brake fluid level 244
Brakes 89
Brake assist system 87
Brake booster 89
New brake pads 89
Parking brake 61
Brake system
Brake fluid 244
Brake fluid specifications for refill and replacement 244
Fluid reservoir 244
Worn brake pads symbol 15
Braking
Brake assist 87
Emergency braking function 62
Indicator light 11
Break-in period
Tires 56
Break-in security feature 25
Breaking in
New tires 257
Browser
refer to Media center 160
Bulb failure (indicator light) 16
Bulb replacement 287
Buttons
Multifunction steering wheel 20, 22

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

C

Cable (USB adapter/AUX connection cable) 155
California Proposition 65 Warning 237
Battery specific 246
Call
Accepting/rejecting 113
Holding/resuming 113
Call list 112
Call waiting (telephone) 119
Canceling route guidance 136
Capacities
Fuel tank 299
Washer fluid reservoir 299
Care 270
Cargo area
refer to Luggage compartment 176
Catalytic converter 235
CD 150, 151
Cell phone
Audi phone box 111
Connecting 110
Playing music 152
also refer to Telephone 110
Cell phone compartment
refer to Audi phone box 111
Central locking 25
Central locking switch 29
Convenience key 28
Emergency locking 30
Luggage compartment lid 30
Power windows 32
Remote control key 27
Setting 29
Certification 297
Changing engine oil 241
Changing light bulbs 287
Changing the scale 20
Characters
Map 139
Navigation 139
Charging the battery 111, 155
Child restraint
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 189
Child restraints
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 230
Child restraint system anchors 226
Child safety 212
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats 215
Tether anchors 228
Tether straps 228
Child safety seat
Unused safety belts on the rear seat 217
Child safety seats
Booster seats 221
Convertible child seats 219
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? 215
Infant seats 218
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system 227
LATCH system 227
Lower anchorages 227
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 227
Safety instructions 215
Child seats 218
Securing 223
Cigarette lighter 47
City events (Audi connect) 123
Cleaning 270
Cleaning/removing ice from windows 272
Cleaning Alcantara 273
Cleaning artificial leather 273
Cleaning carbon parts 272, 273
Cleaning controls 272
Cleaning decorative parts and trim 271, 272
Cleaning displays 272
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 271
Cleaning plastic parts 272
Cleaning rims 271
Cleaning seat covers 273
Cleaning tail lights 271
Cleaning textiles 273
Cleaning the Audi virtual cockpit 272
Cleaning the instrument cluster 272

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate control system (automatic)
Adjusting air vents ... 53
Adjusting the air vents ... 54
Adjusting the temperature ... 53
Air distribution, air vents ... 53
AUTO (automatic mode) ... 53
Blower ... 53
Controls ... 53
Defrosting the windows ... 54
Drive select ... 80
Rear window defogger ... 54
Recirculation mode ... 53
Climate control system (manual)
Adjusting the air vents ... 54
Closing
Hood ... 237
Windows ... 32
Closing/opening
by remote control ... 27
with the central locking switch ... 29
with the convenience key ... 28
Closing and opening
With the door lock ... 30
Cockpit (overview) ... 6
Coming home ... 38
Command (voice recognition system) ... 104
Compartments ... 48
Compass in the mirror ... 42
Compliance ... 297
Connection manager ... 167
Audi MMI connect app ... 167
Bluetooth settings ... 168
Data connection ... 167
Network settings ... 168
Online settings ... 168
Options ... 168
SIM PIN settings ... 168
Connections
refer to Media drives ... 149
Consumer information ... 294
Consumer Information ... 178
Consumption (fuel) ... 23
Contact
Deleting ... 119
Displaying ... 118
Editing ... 118
Favorites ... 114
Importing/exporting ... 118
Navigating ... 133
Searching ... 117
Sending as text message ... 118
Contacting NHTSA ... 178
Control knob with joystick function ... 98
Controls
Multifunction steering wheel ... 20
Convenience key
Indicator light ... 60
Stopping the engine (START ENGINE STOP button) ... 59
unlocking/locking ... 28
Convenience opening/closing ... 32
Convertible child safety seats ... 219
Convertible locking retractor
Activating ... 225
Deactivating ... 225
Using to secure a child safety seat ... 225
Cooling mode (climate control system) ... 53
Cooling system
Adding coolant ... 242
Coolant level checking ... 242
Coolant temperature indicator ... 8
Indicator light ... 12
Cornering light ... 80
Crash data recorder (EDR) ... 94
Cruise control system
Changing speed ... 73
Preselecting speed ... 73
Switching off ... 73
switching on ... 72
Cup holders ... 48
Current consumption ... 23

D

Data connection
Configuring ... 127
Data usage ... 168
Data encryption ... 166
Data protection
Audi connect ... 129
Media drives ... 149
Data recorder ... 94
Date ... 23, 166
daylight saving time ... 166

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Daytime running light 36
Declaration of compliance
Audi side assist 297
Cell phone package 297
Convenience key 297
Electronic immobilizer 297
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 297
Remote control key 297
Defrosting the windshield 54
Defrosting (windows) 54
DEF (instrument cluster) 23
Deleting
Bluetooth device 119
Call list 119
Contact 119
Favorites 114, 137
Home address 136
Deluxe automatic climate control
refer to Climate control system (automatic) 53
Demo mode
refer to Presentation mode 137
Destination on the map 133
Determining correct load limit 263
Digital compass 42
Dimensions 299
Dimming the rearview mirror 40
Directory 117, 133
Connection settings 167
Free text search 117
Memory capacity 119
Navigation destination 133
Settings 119
Sort order 119
Storing a destination 137
Symbols 133
Directory entry
refer to Contact 118
Display
Multifunction steering wheel 20, 22
Navigation map 139
Traffic information 143
also refer to Infotainment system display 166
Distance 23
Door/rear lid warning 19
Driver information system 22
CD/radio display 19
Door/rear lid warning 19
Exterior temperature display 19
Indicator lights 9
Messages 9
On-board computer 23
Service interval display 249
Switching displays 20, 22
Drives
refer to Media drives 149
Drive select 79
Driving economically 57
Driving safely 171
Driving through water 56
Driving time 23
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter 52
DVD 150
Drive 150
Parental control 162
Voice recognition system 108
Dynamic volume
refer to Entertainment volume 169

E

E-mail 115
Economy route 138
Electromechanical parking brake
refer to Parking brake 61
Electromechanical steering 90
Electronic differential lock 87
Electronic immobilizer 25
Electronic speed limiter 72
Electronic stabilization control (ESC) 87
Automatic post-collision braking system .. 87
Indicator light 14
Sport mode 88
Emergency assistance 275
Emergency call (911) 117
Emergency flasher 38
Emergency fueling 234
Emergency locking the doors 30
Emergency locking the front passenger door 30
Emergency operation
Doors 30
Emergency braking function 62
Fuel filler door 235
Luggage compartment lid 31

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency release
Selector lever ... 71
Emergency starting ... 288
Energy management ... 92
Engine
Coolant ... 242
Starting ... 58, 60
Starting with jumper cables ... 288
Stopping ... 59
Engine compartment
Closing the hood ... 237
Opening the hood ... 237
Overview ... 238
Safety precautions ... 236
Engine control (indicator light) ... 15
Engine coolant ... 242
Radiator fan ... 243
Engine oil ... 239
adding ... 240
Changing ... 241
Checking the oil level ... 240
Consumption ... 240
Indicator light ... 13
Oil consumption ... 239
Specification and viscosity ... 239
Engine speed limitation (indicator light) ... 15
Entering a destination ... 131
Geocoordinates ... 135
Last destination ... 132
Stopover ... 135
Voice recognition system ... 107
Entering destination
Point of interest ... 134
Entering letters (speller) ... 99
Entering numbers/symbols (speller) ... 99
Entertainment volume ... 169
Environment
Catalytic converter ... 235
Disposing of your vehicle battery ... 248
Proper disposal of drained brake fluid ... 244
Proper disposal of drained engine oil ... 241
Unleaded gasoline ... 231
What should I do with an old battery? ... 248
Exporting/importing (contacts) ... 118
Exterior lighting ... 36
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting ... 39
Dimming ... 40
Heating ... 39
Exterior temperature display ... 19
External speech dialog system ... 109

F

Facebook (Audi connect) ... 124
Factory settings ... 166
Fader (sound) ... 169
Fastening
Booster seats ... 221
Convertible child safety seats ... 219
Infant seats ... 218
Fast forwarding/rewinding (audio/video file) ... 159
Fast forwarding (audio/video file) ... 159
Fast route ... 138
Favorite
Editing ... 137
Storing ... 137
Favorites
Media ... 161
Navigation ... 133
Telephone ... 114
File formats (media drives) ... 157
Flight information (Audi connect) ... 123
Floor mats ... 175
Fog lights/rear fog light(s) ... 36
Folding the rear seats ... 50
Foot pedals ... 175
Footwell lighting ... 38
For the sake of the environment
Environmentally-friendly driving ... 57
Fueling ... 233
Leaks ... 237
Roof rack ... 49
Free text search ... 102
Directory ... 117
Media ... 161
Navigation ... 132
Frequency band ... 145, 146
Front airbags
Description ... 192
How they work ... 197

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Frontal collisions and the laws of physics .. 181
Front armrest 46
Front seats
Adjusting 173
Child restraints in the front seat 189
Fuel 231
Additives 231
Blended gasoline 231
Current consumption 23
Ethanol 231
Fuel filler neck 232
Fuel gauge 8
Fuel tank capacity 299
Gasoline additives 232
Indicator light 16
Saving fuel 57, 80
Fueling
Fuel filler door emergency release 235
Fuel gauge 8
Fuel tank capacity 299
Opening the fuel filler door 233
With reserve canister (emergency fueling) 234
Fuses
Assignment 286
Replacing 285

G

Garage door opener (HomeLink) 33
Garment hooks 48
Gasoline 231
Octane rating 231
Recommendation 231
Gas station message 137
Generator (indicator light) 13
Global commands (voice recognition system) 105
Glossary of tire and loading terminology .. 252
Glove compartment 48
GPS (time) 166
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 298

H

Handsfree
refer to Telephone 110
Headlight range control system 36
Headlight range control system (indicator light) 16
Headlights 37
Cleaning 271
Headlight range control system 36
Washer system 41
Heated
exterior mirrors 39
Rear window 54
Seats 54
Washer nozzles 41
Heating and ventilation system
Adjusting air vents 54
Help
Audi connect 130
Emergency call (911) 117
Media 164
Navigation 144
Radio 148
Telephone 120
Voice recognition system 105
Hexagonal socket 275
High voltage warning label 298
Hill descent control 68
Home address 133
Editing 136
Navigation 136
Storing 136
HomeLink (garage door opener) 33
Horn 6
How are child restraint system anchors related to child safety 226
How many airbags does my vehicle have? .. 195
How safety belt pretensioners work 186

I

Ignition (indicator light) 14
Imbalance (wheels) 258
Immobilizer 23, 25
Important things to do before driving 171
Importing/exporting (contacts) 118
Improperly worn safety belts 186
Indicator lights 9
Individual speech training 166
Infant seats 218
Inflation pressure (tires) 260

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Information
Navigation ... 131
Telephone ... 110
Voice recognition system ... 105
Infotainment system display
Navigation map ... 139
Online map ... 142
Settings ... 166
Input
Using the speller ... 99
Using the voice recognition system ... 104
Input level (media) ... 162
Inspection interval ... 249
Installing child safety seats
Safety belts ... 223
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage ... 229
Instrument cluster ... 8
Instruments ... 8
Adjusting the lighting ... 39
Interior lighting ... 38
Intermittent (windshield wipers) ... 41
Internet
refer to Audi connect ... 121
Internet radio ... 153
iPod
refer to Audi music interface ... 155
iTunes tagging ... 145

J

Join conference ... 113
Joystick ... 98
Jukebox ... 151
Jump-starting ... 288
Jumper cables ... 289

K

Key ... 25
Key fob with PIN ... 25
Key not recognized ... 60
Key replacement ... 25
Mechanical key ... 25, 26
Messages ... 60
Replacing the battery ... 27
unlocking/locking ... 27, 28
Unlocking and locking ... 30
Key fob with PIN ... 25
Key recognition (climate control system) ... 52
Kick-down
Automatic transmission ... 69
Knee airbags ... 204
Description ... 204
How they work ... 205
Important safety instructions ... 205

L

Lane assist
refer to Active lane assist ... 74
LATCH ... 226
Description ... 227
Installing a child restraint ... 227
Location ... 226
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook ... 227
Launch Control-Program (automatic transmission) ... 69
Leather care/cleaning ... 273
Leaving home ... 38
Left control button ... 21
Licensing agreements ... 170
Lifting jack ... 280
Light
Coming/Leaving home ... 38
Headlight flasher ... 37
Headlights ... 37
Interior/reading lights ... 38
Low beam headlights ... 36
Switching daytime running lights on and off ... 37
Light/rain sensor
Headlights ... 36
Indicator light ... 17
Intermittent (windshield wipers) ... 41
Lighting
Exterior ... 36
Interior ... 38
Lights
Daytime running lights ... 36
Fog lights/rear fog light(s) ... 36
Headlight range control system ... 36
Parking light ... 36
Loading the luggage compartment ... 176

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Locking/unlocking
by remote control ... 27
with the central locking switch ... 29
with the convenience key ... 28
Locking and unlocking
On the door lock ... 30
Loss of reception (radio) ... 148
Low beam headlight ... 36
Lower universal anchorages (Canada) ... 226
Luggage compartment
Cover ... 50
Increasing the size ... 50
Loading ... 176
Luggage compartment lid
Emergency release ... 31
Opening/closing ... 30
Luggage rack ... 49
Lumbar support ... 45

M

Maintenance ... 294
Maintenance intervals ... 249
Map
Audi connect ... 140
Changing the scale ... 133
Online ... 142
Opening ... 133
Operating ... 139
Options menu ... 140
Orientation ... 141
Setting as destination ... 133
Settings ... 141
Using crosshairs ... 133, 139
View ... 139, 141
Zooming ... 133, 139
Map contents ... 139
Map functions ... 140
Maximum speed ... 139
Mechanical key ... 25, 26
Media
Albums ... 160
Artists ... 160
Connection settings ... 167
Displaying the DVD menu ... 162
Favorites ... 161
Folders ... 160
Formats ... 157
Genres ... 160
Options ... 162
Playlist ... 161
Playlists ... 160
Sources overview ... 159
Tracks ... 160
Troubleshooting ... 164
Videos ... 160
Voice recognition system ... 108
Media center ... 160
Media drive ... 149
Media drives
Audi music interface ... 155
Bluetooth audio player ... 152
CD drive ... 151
DVD drive ... 150
Jukebox ... 151
Online media ... 154
Restrictions ... 149
SD card reader ... 150
Supported formats ... 157
Troubleshooting ... 164
Wi-Fi audio player ... 153
Memory capacity
Directory ... 119
Jukebox ... 151
Memory card ... 150, 157
Menu language ... 166
Messages ... 114
Audi music interface ... 155
also refer to E-mail ... 115
also refer to Text message ... 114, 115
Microphone on/off ... 113
Mirror
dimming ... 40
Vanity mirror ... 40
Mirror compass ... 42
Mirrors
Adjusting the exterior mirrors ... 39
MMI
Restarting ... 170
Settings ... 166
Switching on/off ... 95
System settings ... 166
System update ... 168
Volume settings ... 169

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MMI search
refer to Free text search 102, 161
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System .. 199
Multifunction steering wheel
Button 21
Map zoom 20
Operating 20, 22
Pause 21, 22
Switching displays 20, 22
Switching tabs 20, 22
Voice guidance 21
Voice recognition system 21
Multi Media Interface (MMI) 95
Music collection
refer to Jukebox 151
Mute (muting) 21, 22, 169
Muting (mute) 21, 22, 169
myAudi 121
Configuring Audi connect services 122
Finding a destination 135
Logging in in the vehicle 122
PIN 122

N

Natural leather care/cleaning 273
Navigation 131
Audi connect 136
Canceling route guidance 136
Deleting a destination 136
Entering an address 132
Last destination 132
Map 139, 141, 0
Map preview 131
MMI control panel 131
MMI touch 131
Point of interest 134
Search area 134
Troubleshooting 144
Voice recognition system 107
also refer to Map 139
Network connection (Wi-Fi) 126
Network selection (telephone mode) 119
Network settings 119
NHTSA
Contacting 178
Notes
Audi connect 121, 128
CD/DVD 149
Data protection (media drives) 149
Media drives 149
Software licenses 170
Number of seats 180

O

Occupant seating positions 172
Octane rating (gasoline) 231
Odometer 23
Oil
Indicator light 15, 16
also refer to Engine oil 239, 240
Oil change interval 249
Oil dipstick 240
On-Board-Diagnostic System (OBD)
System indicator light (MIL) 17
On-board computer 23
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD)
Data Link Connector (DLC) 18
Electronic speed limiter 72
Online map 142
Online media 154
Online news (Audi connect) 123
Online services
refer to Audi connect 121
Online traffic information (Audi connect) .. 143
Opening
Fuel filler door 233
Hood 237
Windows 32
Opening/closing
with the central locking switch 29
with the convenience key 28
Opening and closing
On the door lock 30
Opening the menu (operating) 95
Operating
Multifunction steering wheel 20, 22
Operating the MMI
Control knob 96
Control panel 95
Free text search 102
Letter and number speller 99
Menus/symbols 101
MMI touch 97

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Options menu 97
Selection menu 96
Operation
Voice recognition system 104
Options
Navigation 136
Options menu
Connection manager 168
Control unit 21
Directory 119
Map 140
Media 162
Opening/closing 97
Radio settings 147
Telephone 119
Overview
Menus and symbols 101
Voice recognition system 104
Overview (Cockpit) 6

P

Paint damage 272
Paint No. 298
Parental control (DVD) 162
Parking aids
Cleaning sensors 271
Parking brake 61
Emergency braking function 62
Indicator light 12, 61
Parking 62
Power supply failure 61
Releasing/setting 61
Starting from a stop 62
also refer to Parking brake 61
Parking light 36
Parking system
Adjusting the display/warning tone 86
Cleaning the rearview camera 84
Malfunction 86
Parking system plus 83
Peripheral display 83
Rearview camera 84
also refer to Parking systems 83, 84
Parking systems 82
Rear parking system 82
Parking (automatic transmission) 66
Parts replacement 296
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 200
Pause (audio/video file) 159
Pausing (audio/video files) 21
Pausing (audio/video file) 22
Pedals 175
Peripheral display 83
Phone book
refer to Directory 117
Phone number
Call list 112
Dialing 112
Directory 112
Favorites 112
Physical principles of a frontal collision . . . 181
Playback (media) 159
Point of interest
Entering 134
Search area 134
Point of interest search 134
Polishing 272
Pollen filter
refer to Pollutant filter 52
Pollutant filter 52
Power
seat adjustment 45
Windows 32
Power windows
Convenience opening/closing 32
Malfunction 33
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 185
Presentation mode 137
Presets
Radio 147
Presets list
refer to Favorites 147
Pressure (tires) 268
Programming a button (multifunction steering wheel) 21
Prompt (voice recognition system) 104
Proper occupant seating positions 172
Proper safety belt position 185

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Proper seating position
Front passenger 173
Occupants 172
Rear passengers 174
Protecting 272

Q

quattro (all wheel drive) 91
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . 182

R

Radiator fan 243
Radio 145
Additional station information 146
Free text search 145
Frequency band 146
Menu 146
MMI control panel 145
Presets 147
Program guide 146
Radio text 146
Scan 146
Station list 145
Troubleshooting 148
Updating stations (station list) 145
Voice recognition system 108
Radio settings
Additional station information 147
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 36
Indicator light 17
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 41
Raising the vehicle 292
Range (fuel level) 23
Reading aloud
Possible commands 105
Reading lights 38
Rear lid
refer to Luggage compartment lid 30
Rear spoiler 91
Rearview camera
refer to Parking systems 83, 84
Rearview mirror dimming 40
Rear window defogger 54
Recirculation mode (climate control system) 53
Recuperation 23
Redial 119
Refueling 232
Remote control
refer to Remote control key 25
Remote control key 25
LED 27
Personalizing 25
Replacing the battery 27
unlocking/locking 27
Repair manuals 294
Repairs
Airbag system 202
Replacement key 25
Replacing windshield wiper blades 42
Reporting Safety Defects 178
Rerouting 137, 142
Reset button (trip odometer) 23
Resetting the trip odometer 23
Reset (restart) 170
Restart (reset) 170
Retract
New brake pads 89
Retractor 184
Reverse (automatic transmission) 64
Rewinding (audio/video file) 159
Right control button 21
Rims 264
Ringtone settings 119, 169
Road noise compensation (SDVC) 169
Roaming
refer to Data connection 127
Roof rack 49
Roof load 49
Route criteria 137
Route guidance
refer to Navigation 132
Route information 141
Route list 140

S

Safe driving 171
Safe driving habits 171

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety
Airbag system ... 188
Belts ... 180
Correct seating position ... 172
Safety belt position ... 185
Safety belts worn by pregnant women ... 185
Safety belt pretensioner
Service and disposal ... 187
Safety belts ... 180, 184
Cleaning ... 272
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt ... 182
Fastening ... 184
Improperly worn ... 186
Indicator light ... 13
Indicator light (rear) ... 17
Not worn ... 182
Safety belt position ... 185
Safety belt tensioner ... 186
Safety instructions ... 183
Securing child safety seats ... 223
Special considerations for pregnant women ... 185
Unfastening ... 186
Warning/indicator light ... 180
Worn properly ... 182
Safety belt warning light ... 180
Safety compliance sticker ... 298
Safety equipment ... 171
Safety features for occupant restraint and protection ... 171
Safety guidelines
Seat adjustment ... 44
Safety instructions
for side curtain airbags ... 211
for using child safety seats ... 215
For using safety belts ... 183
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System ... 202
Safety systems (indicator light) ... 15
Saving fuel
Recuperation ... 23
Screen
refer to Display ... 20, 22
Screwdriver ... 275
SD card reader ... 150
Search function
refer to Free text search ... 102, 161
Searching for a destination online ... 134
Seat adjustment
Driver's seat ... 44
Front passenger's seat ... 44
Safety guidelines ... 44
Seat heating ... 54
Seating capacity ... 180
Seating position
Driver ... 172
Front passenger ... 173
How to adjust the front seats ... 173
Incorrect seat position ... 174
Occupants ... 172
Rear passengers ... 174
Seats
adjusting ... 45
Correct seating position ... 172
Easy seat entry ... 46
Folding ... 50
Number of seats ... 180
Security
Audi connect ... 126
Data protection (media drives) ... 149
Navigation ... 131
Telephone ... 110
Voice recognition system ... 104
Selecting a source (media) ... 159
Selection menu
Multifunction steering wheel ... 21
Opening/closing ... 96
Selective wheel torque control ... 87
Selector lever (automatic transmission)
Emergency operation ... 71
Position ... 64
Serial number (telephone) ... 119
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner ... 187
Service interval display ... 249
Settings ... 166
Directory ... 119
Map ... 141
Media ... 162
System ... 166
Telephone ... 119
Voice recognition system ... 166
Setting the language ... 166
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) ... 68

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Showing on map 136
Shuffle 162
Side airbags
Description 206
How they work 207
Side assist 76
Adjusting the brightness 79
Sensor range 77
switching on and off 79
Side curtain airbags 209
Description 209
How they work 210
Safety instructions 211
SIM card reader 121
Snow chains 265
Socket 47
Software licenses 170
Software update 166
Software version 166
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 230
Spare tire 283
Speed-dependent volume control (SDVC) .. 169
Speed limit display 139
Speed limiter 72
Speed warning system 72
Speller 99
Sport mode 88
START Engine STOP button 58
Starting from a stop
Hill start assist 62
Starting point (presentation mode) 137
Starting (engine) 58
Station list (radio) 145
Steering
Electromechanical steering 90, 0
Indicator light 13
also refer to Electromechanical steering .. 90
Steering wheel
adjusting 58
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) ... 68
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel 20, 21, 22
Steps for determining correct load limit ... 263
Stopover 135
Stopping (engine) 59
Storage compartments 48
Stored stations
refer to Favorites 147
Storing current location 140
Street view 142
S tronic transmission
refer to Automatic transmission 64
S tronic (automatic transmission) 64
Subtitles (DVD) 162
Subwoofer (sound) 169
Sun visors 40
Swapping 113
Switching daytime running lights on and off 37
Switching tabs
refer to Multifunction steering wheel 20, 21, 22
Switching the ignition on 58
Symbols
Directory 133
Map 139
Navigation 139
Route criteria 138
Traffic information 143
also refer to Indicator lights 9
System indicator light (MIL) 15, 17
System settings 166
System update 168
System (sound) 169

T

Tachometer 8, 19, 23
Technical data 298
Technical modifications 296
Telephone 110
Connecting 110
Connection settings 167
Favorites 114
Main functions 112
Options during a phone call 113
Replacing a call 113
Settings 119
Switching the microphone on/off 113
Troubleshooting 120
Voice recognition system 105
also refer to Cell phone 110
Telephone mode 119

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Temperature display
Exterior temperature ... 19
Temperature indicator
Coolant ... 8
Tether anchors ... 228
Tether strap ... 228
Text message ... 114, 115
Sending a contact ... 118
Text messages
refer to Text message ... 114, 115
Tie-downs ... 177
Time ... 23, 166
tiptronic (automatic transmission) ... 68
Tire Mobility System (tire repair set) ... 275
Tires ... 250
All wheel drive ... 91
Low aspect ratio tires ... 265
Repair set ... 275
Replacing ... 277
Service life ... 258
Tire pressure ... 260
Tire pressure monitoring system ... 267, 268
Tire pressure table ... 261
Tread wear indicators ... 258
Unidirectional ... 252
Uniform tire quality grading ... 266
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology ... 252
Tires and vehicle load limits ... 262
TMC/TMCpro
refer to Traffic information (TMC) ... 143
Tone (sound) ... 169
Tool ... 275
Towing
Tow trucks ... 290
Towing loop ... 275
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) ... 268
Traffic information (TMC) ... 142
Opening ... 143
Reading aloud ... 143
Showing on the map ... 143
Volume ... 169
Transmission malfunction (indicator light) ... 70
Transport Canada ... 178
Treble (sound) ... 169
Troubleshooting
Audi connect ... 130
Media drives ... 164
Navigation ... 144
Radio ... 148
Telephone ... 120
Turn signals ... 37
Twitter (Audi connect) ... 124

U

Unfastening safety belts ... 186
Uniform tire quality grading ... 266
Units of measurement ... 166
Unlocking/locking
by remote control ... 27
with the central locking switch ... 29
with the convenience key ... 28
Unlocking and locking
On the door lock cylinder ... 30
Updating station (radio) ... 145
USB adapter (Audi) ... 155
USB stick
refer to Audi music interface ... 155
Using Audi connect services
MMI control panel ... 121
Voice recognition system ... 106

V

Vanity mirror ... 40
Vehicle
Care/cleaning ... 270
Dimensions ... 299
Out of service ... 274
Vehicle identification label ... 298
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) ... 298
Vehicle jack ... 275, 280, 283
Vehicle tool kit ... 275
Version information ... 166
View (multifunction steering wheel) ... 20, 22
Voice guidance ... 138
During a call ... 138
Traffic ... 138
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel ... 20, 21, 22
Voice mail ... 116

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Voice recognition system 104
Individual speech training 166
Information 105
Input assistance 104
Multifunction steering wheel 21
Operating 104
Settings 166
Switching on and off 104
Volume 21, 104
Voice recognition system commands
Global commands 105
Media 108
Radio 108
Telephone 105
Volume 169
Entertainment volume 169
MMI touch 169
Parking system 169
System volume 169
Telephone 169
Voice recognition system 21, 104

W

Warning/indicator lights
System indicator light (MIL) 15
Warning/Indicator lights
Airbag system 199, 200
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 200
Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 9
Warranty coverages 294
Washer fluid level (indicator light) 16
Washing matte finish paint 270
Weather (Audi connect) 123
Web radio 153
Weights 298
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 185
What happens to unbelted occupants? 182
What impairs driving safety? 172
Wheel bolts 264
Wheels 250
Cleaning 271
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 252
Replacing 277
Tires and vehicle load limits 262
Wheel wrench 275
When must the airbag system be inspected? 199
Where are lower anchorages located? 227
Why safety belts? 181
Wi-Fi
Audi music stream 153
Audio player 153
Hotspot 126
Online media 154
Settings 126
also refer to Wi-Fi 153
Wi-Fi audio player 153
Window regulators 32
Windows
Cleaning/removing ice 272
Defrost 54
Window washer system
Reservoir capacity 299
Windshield
cleaning 41
also refer to Windshield 41
Windshield washer system 41, 248
Windshield wipers
Cleaning wiper blades 42
Folding up 42
Indicator light 16
Replacing windshield wiper blades 42
Switching on and off 41
Winter driving
Snow chains 265
Tires 264
Winter operation
Battery 245
Cooling system 242
Defrost the windows 54
Windshield washer system 248
Winter tires 264
Winter use
Car washes 270
Removing ice from windows 272
Seat heating 54
Writing a message 115

X

Xenon headlights 36

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Z

Zooming on the map
Multifunction steering wheel 20
Zoom (map) 139

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

© 2015 AUDI AG

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. Audi, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. Text, illustrations and specifications in this book are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG. Subject to alteration or amendment. Printed in Germany.

Editorial deadline: 03/05/2015

For the sake of the environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Owner's Manual
2016 Audi TT Coupe
Englisch Nordamerika 04.2015
161.561.8FV.21



1615618FV21

www.audi.com

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine